**WHICH HOLY BOOK IS THE WORD OF GOD**

By Harmanjit Singh Saini

September 26, 2018

Member of the United Church of God

P.O. Box 541027

Cincinnati, OH 45254-1027

USA

Web site: www.ucg.org

PH : 1-888-886-8632 (USA) OR 1-513-576-9796 (WORLDWIDE)

*[Unless otherwise stated, the King James Version (KJV) of the Bible has been for reference, but common modern words such as you for ‘thou’, ‘thee’ and ‘ye’ have been used, so that readers not familiar with the KJV Bible may find it easier to read. Mostly the New King James Version (NKJV) translation has been used as an alternate]*

If a God has created the universe, including mankind, a natural question for us to ask is: “has He provided mankind an instruction manual on how to live our lives?” And where would we find that instruction manual? Since only religion deals with God, the logical place to look is the scriptures of various religions

The world has many religions. Some are based on the existence of a supreme Creator God while others are not. Scriptures of religions not based on the existence of God are mere men’s philosophies and can be ignored as we are looking for God’s instruction manual for mankind. So, the right place to look is the holy books of the religions based on the existence of God. Only 5 religions are based on the existence of God: Christianity, Judaism, Islam, Hinduism and Sikhism. So, the holy books of only these 5 religions have been analyzed.

Our next challenge is to develop criteria for testing which holy book of which religion is God-inspired in its entirety, if any, so that we can safely use it as an instruction manual for our lives. The most suitable criterion is that the holy book should demonstrate God’s almighty power in some way. One way for God to do so would be to foretell many things in the holy book and bring them to pass precisely as foretold. That would prove that the words of that holy book are the truth. For this reason, we will use prophecy (foretelling of future events and their fulfillment) as one criterion to test if a particular holy book is the inspired word of God.

Secondly, the holy book should be scientifically accurate, and there should be no errors in it. And thirdly, the holy book should be accurately transmitted through centuries down to our time.

This book analyzes the holy books of Christianity (the Bible), Judaism (Old Testament of the Bible), Islam (the Koran), Hinduism (the Gita) and the Guru Granth of the Sikhs according to the criteria established to determine which one is the true inspired word of God. Analysis shows the happy result that only one holy book passes our test and is indeed the true word of God.

**CONTENTS**

Introduction 4

Chapter 1 – One Supreme God vs. Multiple gods 8

Chapter 2 – Religions Claiming to be Inspired by the Creator 15

Chapter 3 – Salvation According to the Theistic Religions 22

Chapter 4 – How to Prove which Plan of Salvation is True 44

Chapter 5 – Which Religion is Backed by God 48

Chapter 6 – Prophecies in the Bible till Noah’s Flood 54

Chapter 7 – Prophecies after the Flood 71

Chapter 8 – Man’s Ancient History in Brief 74

Chapter 9 – God’s Promises to Abraham 87

Chapter 10 – Prophecies Fulfilled by American and British Peoples 96

Chapter 11 – God of the Universe 108

Chapter 12 – God Controls Affairs of Individuals 117

Chapter 13 – Prophecies About the Messiah Fulfilled 129

Chapter 14 – Prophecies Fulfilled in Our Times 138

Chapter 15 – Has the Bible Been Altered 160

Chapter 16 – Archaeology, Astronomy and Medicine 172

Chapter 17 – Harmful Philosophies of Various Religions 176

Conclusion 185

Suggested Reading 186

**WHICH HOLY BOOK IS THE WORD OF GOD**

**INTRODUCTION**

Humanity has tried to develop codes of conduct for what it means to be good. In fact, there are whole religions based on human reasoning alone without taking into consideration whether God exists or not. Examples include atheism, atheistic communism, Buddhism, Shintoism, Taoism, Confucianism and the like. These religions do not claim that a God revealed the code of conduct to the founder of the religion. The founder developed the code of conduct after enlightenment or deep reasoning of his own.

Since these religions are the philosophies of men, they do not address the question: What is salvation for human beings? They do not address the question of life after death in any comprehensive way.

On the other hand, major religions of the world claim that God exists, and He gave the laws for human conduct. Christianity, Islam, Hinduism and Judaism fall into this category. Sikhism claims that a supreme God exists but does not claim direct revelation from Him to their gurus. These religions that claim that God exists, and gave them the basic tenets of their religion, also address the question of life after death in some detail. In other words, they describe what salvation is. Though the Sikh gurus do not claim direct revelation from the supreme God, they do describe what salvation is. Salvation in Sikhism is similar to salvation according to Hinduism.

**Life’s Ultimate Question**

Since there is no agreement on the laws humanity should live by between all the non-religious, the religions based on human reasoning alone, and religions which claim revelation for their beliefs from a supreme Creator God, we are forced to first ask life’s ultimate question: Does God exist?

If the answer to life’s ultimate question is “Yes!”, then that changes everything. If a Supreme Creator God exists, and He has created everything, including mankind, then the ideas of the non-religious and those of the religions based on human reasoning alone, meaning mere philosophies of men, can be discarded as non-authoritative, unless the Creator created mankind and left it alone to develop its own ideas on how to live.

On the other hand, if a Creator God exists, created mankind, and also revealed the laws mankind should live by, then our task in search for the truth is much simplified. A Creator God ought to know how His product, mankind, can be best maintained. If we can find that correct instruction manual for mankind from the true Creator God, then we can reject all others and use only that correct instruction manual to live our lives.

For most efficient search for the right ‘religion’ or ‘way of life’ we must begin by asking the ultimate question: Does God Exist?

We have very good news in this regard. We have plenty of proof that one supreme Creator God does indeed exist. I was recently involved in a discussion on my WhatsApp group consisting of engineering school (Indian Institute of Technology, New Delhi, India) fellow graduates. I was asked to provide the kind of proof that I sought that convinced me that God exists. Here is how I answered that and related questions.

Some in the group said that they will believe God exists if they see Him. If God appeared to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, why then does He not appear to you and me now?

The answer is that if we were to see God in His true spirit form, we would perish. That should be easy to understand. We can barely look at the sun at such a long distance. Any closer to the sun, we would not survive. God who created the sun surely is brighter than that and we would not be able to survive in His presence.

He can come in human form. But if He came in human form, we would still not believe He is God, even if He did numerous miracles. He would be miserable in seeing humans violating His laws and reaping pain, suffering and misery as a result, and would tell humanity how to conduct themselves and not violate His laws, which would arouse the ire of most. They would tell Him to get lost and probably attack Him. The fact is that He did come in human form as Jesus Christ and did numerous miracles. Jews and Gentiles alike murdered Him because He rebuked them for their sins and did not believe that He was the God of the Old Testament of the Bible Who had created all the angelic world, the material universe, humanity and all creatures on earth. If He came to earth in human form today, humanity will laugh Him to scorn and hound Him out of their neighborhoods.

Before coming to earth as Jesus Christ, He did come in human form earlier as the High Priest Melchizedek of Salem mentioned in the Bible. But He could not continue among humans because of their sins. Abraham was aware of Him and interacted with Him.

God interacted with Noah, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Job and Moses because they were obedient to Him. When He interacted with them, they did not question Him or mock Him, but obeyed Him without question in whatever He required of them. That’s why He interacted with them and does not show Himself to us.

However, He is coming again and will show Himself and interact with humans shortly, most probably within our own lifetimes, but not in the way we imagine. This time He is not coming as a weak human being, but like the God of the Old Testament, to take over the kingdoms of the world and set up God’s Kingdom.

To understand how that will happen in outline form, you can read my 15-page post titled “Summary of Sequence of End-Time Events” at my website www.ChurchofGodMessage.com.

To further understand why God does not show Himself, we have to go back to what happened in the Garden of Eden.

The first humans God created, Adam and Eve, disobeyed His instructions to not eat of the fruit of the tree of good and evil, but listened to Satan instead. So God drove them out of the Garden of Eden to prevent them from eating of the tree of life, living forever, continuing to listen to Satan and sinning, and reaping misery for eternity. After that God has been working on a 7,000-year plan to bring humanity to Himself and build a relationship with Him. He has allotted the first 6,000 years to man to do as he pleases. In effect, after Adam and Eve disobeyed God, He said to mankind [this is excerpted from Volume 1 of my ancient history book “Satan vs God: From the Beginning to the Flood”:

In driving man out of the Garden of Eden, God effectively told him: “Adam and Eve, by taking of the fruit of the tree of good and evil, you have made a decision for yourself, and all your descendants, to rebel against My commands, My government and My way of life characterized by love, giving and sharing. You have rejected Me as the source of knowledge of how to live. You have chosen to decide for yourself through your own experiences, trial and error and your own human reasoning as influenced by Satan, what is good and evil, right and wrong, rather than be taught by me. By listening to and obeying Satan, you have now opened yourself to be influenced by him.

“I am now sentencing you for 6,000 years to be cut off from Me and access to My Holy Spirit, which you would have received by taking of the fruit of the tree of life. Go out into the world and develop your own society and civilization. Develop your own methods of government, make your own laws, make your own gods and develop your own religions, your own education systems and how you will impart knowledge to your descendants. But in all this you will be influenced and deceived by Satan in his way of self-centeredness, vanity, lust, greed, envy, jealousy, hatred, competition and strife which will lead to violence, wars, bloodshed and death.

“However, I will also ensure that knowledge of My ways will not die out completely in the world. Since you will not have access to My holy spirit, your understanding to know My way will not be opened, and without My holy spirit you will not be able to live that way. But, I will call a few individuals [such as Abel, Enoch, Noah, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Job, Moses, David, Elijah, Elisha and the prophets] for special service during these 6,000 years and give them My holy spirit. I will teach them My ways and they shall live that way with the help of the holy spirit. They will be required to do what you have failed to do. They will have to reject Satan’s way, resist and overcome him, and develop and grow in My holy, righteous character. Those who successfully resist and overcome Satan, and develop My holy, righteous character will qualify to receive eternal life and become my sons, and shall rule with Me as kings and priests in My kingdom over all nations.

“After you and your descendants have written the lesson of Satan’s way and your own ways in 6,000 years [which by the way are coming to a close] of suffering, anguish, want, scarcity, strife, violence, wars, bloodshed and death, and the world will have been brought to the brink of total annihilation, then I will use my supernatural power to intervene to save you from yourselves and Satan. After you have learnt the utter hopelessness of living your way and Satan’s way, I will take back my kingdom and government from you. I will then set up My own kingdom and government over you for 1,000 years. I will then teach all humanity My way and give everyone who repents of his sins and his way of life my holy spirit, which will give them the power to keep My laws and live according to My way of life. I will then demonstrate to all humanity that My way of love produces true happiness, joy, abundance and prosperity, and that your way and Satan’s way produces pain, suffering and death. During that time, I will imprison Satan so that he will no longer be able to influence you. I will give salvation to those who develop holy and righteous character through the power of My holy spirit. They shall receive My gift of eternal life and become My sons.

“During the 6,000 years most of your descendants will not be called and given My holy spirit. But neither will I judge them. But at the end of 1,000 years of My kingdom, I will use My divine power to resurrect them back to life as physical human beings again. I will then offer eternal salvation to all of them. Those who repent of their sins will be given My holy spirit to enable them to keep My laws and live according to My way of life. Satan will not be around to influence them. So they will not have to resist and overcome him. They will have to overcome only their own natures and the pulls of society. Those who develop My holy and righteous character will be granted the gift of eternal life and become my immortal sons. Those who fail to do so, will be destroyed in the Lake of Fire and their lives extinguished forever.”

The good news is that almost all of humanity will accept God’s way as taught and lived during 1,000 years of God’s Kingdom, after they contrast it with the 6,000 years that humanity lived in its own way as influenced by Satan. Of course, all of humanity will be able to see God in His kingdom. After that, all of humans made immortal as God’s literal sons and daughters will live with Him for eternity. They will have learnt to obey and trust God completely.

**CHAPTER 1**

**ONE SUPREME GOD VS. MULTIPLE GODS**

Before describing the proofs that convinced me that God exists, we must briefly discuss whether one Supreme God exists or are there multiple god in control of different parts of the universe and earth? Islam and Judaism believe in one God. Traditional Christianity believes in the existence of a Triune God [one God] who exists in three forms Father, Son and the Holy Spirit. Hinduism believes in thousands of gods. Sikhism believes in one supreme God but acknowledges that other inferior gods such as those of Hinduism may exist. What is the truth?

Astronomy has showed us evidence of battered planets in our solar system and the existence of the asteroid and Kuiper belts which point to a cosmic war that took place in the distant past, perhaps between gods. That seems to point to the existence of multiple gods. And yet, today we see perfect control in our solar system where all the planets continue in their ‘appointed’ orbits, governed by definite laws. If the orbit of the earth was to change slightly, life on earth would not exist. It requires supreme intellect and power to make such laws and sustain them. That is evidence for the existence of a single, supreme Creator God, in perfect control of the universe.

There are some groups who deny the existence of God by recycling old gnostic arguments that no God can be in control of the earth because of the disasters that humans experience such as earthquakes, hurricanes, floods, famines, droughts, and disease epidemics, resulting in misery, pain and suffering. They provide that as their justification for believing in the existence of multiple gods.

Another twist of such theories, which the Germans believe in, can be found in the book titled “The Gospel of Judas”, edited by Rodolphe Kasser, Marvin Meyer and Gregor Wurst with Commentary by Bart Ehrman. Ehrman makes this statement on pages 84-85:

“Traditional Christianity has taught, of course, that our world is the good creation of the one true God. But this was not the view of the Gnostics. According to a wide range of Gnostic groups, the god who created this world is not the only god and in fact is not even the most powerful or all-knowing god. He is a much lesser, inferior, and often ignorant deity. How can anyone look at this world and call it good? Gnostics saw the disasters around them – the earthquakes, hurricanes, floods, famines, droughts, epidemics, misery, suffering – and they declared that the world is not good.”

“…Some Gnostic thinkers explained this evil, material world by expounding complicated myths of creation. According to these myths, the ultimate divine being is completely removed from this world, in that he is absolutely spirit – with no material aspects or qualities. This divine being generated lots of offspring known as aeons who, like him, were spiritual entities. Originally this divine realm, inhabited by God and his aeons, was all that existed. But a cosmic catastrophe occurred in which one of these aeons somehow fell from the divine realm, leading to the creation of other divine beings who therefore came into existence outside of the divine sphere. These lesser divine beings created our material world. They made the world as a place of entrapment for sparks of divinity that they had captured, to be placed within human bodies. Some humans, in other words, have an element of the divine within them, at their core. These people don’t have mortal souls, but immortal souls, temporarily imprisoned in this capricious and miserable realm of matter. And those souls need to escape, to return to the divine realm whence they came.

“The myths narrated by the various Gnostic groups differed widely from one another in many of their details…But their overriding point is clear: This world is not the creation of the one true God. The god who made this world – the God of the Old Testament – is a secondary, inferior deity. He is not the God above all who is to be worshipped. Rather, he is to be avoided, by learning the truth about the ultimate divine realm, this evil material world, our entrapment here, and how we can escape.

“I should stress that not everyone has the means to escape. That is because not everyone has a spark of the divine within them: only some of us do. The other people are the creations of the inferior god of this world. They, like other creatures here (dogs, turtles, mosquitoes, and so on), will die and that will be the end of their story. But some of us are trapped divinities. And we need to learn how to return to our heavenly home.”

This is why the Germans believe that salvation is only for them because they have the divine spark in them whereas all other humans are like animals. This belief has been the cause of much cruelty practiced by them throughout their history. They no longer hide the fact that Satan is their god who guides them. It also explains their denigration of Christianity because according to their philosophy, the Christian God is an inferior God.

The theory of evolution is another German hoax perpetrated by a German masquerader (a person of German ancestry living in a country with a name common to citizens of the country) named Charles Darwin. They know it is a hoax perpetrated by them under Satan’s influence. That’s why Germans can duplicitously use the occurrence of natural disasters on earth as their ‘evidence’ for ‘believing’ in the theory of evolution and atheism, as well as for their belief that the God of Christianity is an inferior God.

If multiple gods rule the earth, then we would expect humans to be fighting each other, which is what we see on earth today. That seems to provide evidence that more than one god rules the earth. On the other hand, if one Supreme Creator God rules the earth, then the only proof that would convince me that He is the Almighty is that He demonstrates His ability to protect human beings under all circumstances. Another way that would convince me that a God is Almighty is if He makes some promises to human beings and has the power to keep them; or He predicts many things and has the power to make them all come true under all circumstances, precisely as predicted.

The Bible solved the mystery of multiple gods, despite other evidence pointing to one Supreme God in perfect control of the universe relatively easily for me when I considered that Satan the devil is active on earth. The Bible reveals that He was a created angel named Lucifer, originally created perfect. He was sent at the head of a pioneering party of angels to rule the earth. But he and the angels with him rebelled against God. He stormed God’s throne in heaven with the angels under his command. They were defeated and cast back to earth. The destruction we see in our solar system, and perhaps elsewhere in our galaxy and other galaxies is the result of that war. His name was changed to Satan, and the angels with him on earth came to be known as demons. Since then he has been an enemy of God and opposes Him in every purpose and project. He was with Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden and deceived them into disobeying God resulting in their expulsion from the Garden of Eden. Mankind was created to qualify and replace Satan and the demons as rulers on earth.

Since Satan and the demons are God’s created beings, they are mere pips compared to God and Jesus Christ. But God has left them in charge of the earth, though still subject to His rule, until mankind receives salvation by being made immortal sons and daughters of God. Till that time, Satan masquerades around as the god of this world, as Paul the apostle said in 2 Corinthians 4:3-4, “3 But if our gospel [good news] be hid, it is hid to them that are lost: 4 In whom the god of this world [Satan] has blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.” Satan is the one who leads human beings to fight, do violence to and kill each other.

Now coming back to the question of the kind of proof I sought that convinced me that God exists.

I wanted three kinds of proof: 1) Man was created by God and did not evolve; 2) an Almighty God exists who has complete control over the affairs of mankind and is fully capable of protecting those who obey Him; 3) and God who further demonstrates His almighty power by being able to state that He will do something and bring it to pass unerringly, or in other words God’s ability to tell the future and bring it to pass.

*Proof 1 – Man was created and did not Evolve*

In early years as an engineering student, I was an atheist as I accepted without questioning that the Theory of Evolution must be correct, because I thought that the brightest minds in the world, 99.99% of scientists and engineers cannot all be wrong. However, in 1970 I came across the magazine “The Plain Truth” published by Herbert W. Armstrong and the Worldwide Church of God. The magazine published probability calculations for even the simplest protein forming from amino acids by random combinations. It was one chance in 1048. I began to suspect that the theory of evolution was false.

I was clear in my mind, that if man did not evolve, then the only alternative is that he was created, and all the material universe was created. And creation demands a creator. All the sum total of our experience tells us that something cannot create itself out of nothing, and then begin governing itself by well-defined laws of physics, chemistry, mathematics and biology. We also know that laws have to be sustained, and that requires power. I was finally able to prove to my entire satisfaction that evolution is a hoax. Here are the proofs.

In the first step in evolution, it assumes that matter has always existed. A most foolish assumption without any basis. The Big Bang Theory shows that the universe was created at a specific point in time. Those scientists who are willing to look at the evidence with an open mind, attribute that to a primal cause, meaning God. Evolution simply has no way to explain the material creation. So, it fails in the first step of its explanation that life evolved.

The proponents of evolution want us to believe that the second step in the evolutionary process is that the gas molecules present in the atmosphere combined to form amino acids through discharges of electric energy from lightning. (Of course, based on their first assumption, these gas molecules have always existed, which has no credible explanation other than creation.) These amino acids accumulated in a pre-biotic hot soup. Then random combinations in the ocean of pre-biotic amino acid soup formed all the proteins, enzymes and other molecules necessary for life.

How probable is it that random combinations of amino acids will produce the required proteins to form the simplest single-celled living organism? Fortunately, astronomers, mathematicians and other scientists have made probability calculations that give us a good idea of how likely it is that the required proteins can be produced by random combinations of amino acids.

For example, the probability of 300 amino acids of 20 different types randomly combining to form the average sized protein is one chance in 10 raised to the power of 570. Even Dawkins and Hitchens, rabid advocates of the theory of evolution, were forced to admit that proteins did not form by random combinations of molecules. So, evolution fails in the second step of its explanation for origin of life.

According to evolutionists, once all the necessary proteins had formed by chance, and all the chemicals necessary for life had accumulated, when all the conditions were just perfect, then through a lucky accident the first simplest single-celled living creature was formed. This according to them is the third step in the process of origination of life and evolution.

According to this step, life originated from non-living matter. But this concept is contrary to one of the most basic laws of nature: the law of biogenesis, according to which, life can come only from preexisting life.

Throughout nature there is abundant proof of the daily working of the law of biogenesis. No fact of science stands more conclusively proved. Evolution has not been able to provide a shred of evidence to disprove this law despite carrying out experiments under the most ideal conditions. Life did not come into existence by itself out of matter. The third step in evolution did not and could not have taken place.

In the fourth step, evolutionists would have us believe that once formed by a lucky accident, the simple single-celled creature gradually and progressively evolved through tiny increments over millions of years to higher, better-adapted forms of life such as fish, amphibians, reptiles, mammals and eventually primates (apes) and man.

When Charles Darwin proposed his theory in the mid-19th century, he anticipated that fossil discoveries would provide convincing evidence in support of his ideas. He predicted that countless transitional forms would be found in the fossil record. But no such creatures exist. They are completely absent from the fossil record.

If traditional evolutionary theory were true, the fossil record would have the following features:

• Simpler life forms would gradually appear.

• Simpler life forms would gradually evolve over time into more complex life forms.

• There would be numerous transitional links between different kinds of creatures such as fish and reptiles, and reptiles and birds.

• These transitional creatures would have partial features such as new limbs, bones and organs in various stages of development.

• The less complex life forms would become extinct. For example, if chimpanzees evolved into man, then there is no logical reason why chimpanzees should still exist. All should have evolved into man.

On the other hand, if creation is true, the fossil record would have the following features:

• Complex life forms would suddenly appear.

• Complex life forms would multiply “after their kinds” (Genesis 6:20), but with limited variety within those kinds. All the varieties and species of animals within the kind would be able to interbreed.

• There would be no transitional links between kinds of creatures.

• There would be no creatures with partial features such as new limbs, bones and organs; all parts would be complete and fully functional.

• Various kinds of creatures would continue to co-exist.

After a century and a half of study and research, what does the fossil record show? It contains all the features predicted by the biblical account of creation.

CONCLUSION: None of the four steps in supposed evolution are feasible or took place.

For more detailed explanation, please read my 15-page article “Is Evolution True?” You can find it at my website www.ChurchofGodMessage.com or at the following link:

http://www.churchofgodmessage.com/isevolutiontrue.html

Thus, creation is proof that God exists.

*Proof 2 – God Has Demonstrated His ability to protect those who obey Him*

The second proof of the existence of God I sought was demonstration of the almighty power of God, ability to protect those who obey Him, and His total control over the affairs of mankind. The issue boiled down to God making promises to people and being able to keep them, which necessarily involves protecting those to whom He made the promises.

I found that proof in the book titled *“United States and Britain in Prophecy”* written by Herbert W. Armstrong in which I learnt of God’s incredible promises to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Judah and king David and how He protected these men from any harm by kings, evil leaders, in wars with empires, and sustained them during famines to fulfill His promises through nearly 4,000 years of human history. In fulfilling His promises, God demonstrated that He is fully in control over the affairs of all of mankind, and He is able to protect from harm those who obey Him.

All those promises and how they were fulfilled are described later in detail in this book.

*Proof 3 – God Foretold the Future and Brought it to Pass*

God’s Almighty power is also demonstrated by His ability to foretell the future and bring it to pass exactly as foretold. This proof is provided by numerous prophecies in the Bible of great events, the establishment and passing away of great empires in the history of mankind and bringing it to pass in precise detail. Fulfillment of these events is provable from world history. All these prophecies and their fulfillment is described in great deal in this book.

In fact, this is the very challenge the God of the Bible hurls at the gods of every other religion in Isaiah 41:21-24 (Moffatt Translation): “Now, the Eternal cries, bring your case forward, now, Jacob’s King (God) cries, STATE YOUR PROOFS. Let us hear what happened in the past, that we may ponder it, or show Me what is yet to be, that we may watch how it turns out; yes, let us hear what is coming, that we may be sure you are gods; come, do something or other that we may marvel at the sight!—why, you are things of naught, you can do nothing at all!”

Has the God of any religion dared to take up this challenge of the God of the Bible? No. Not one! This will also be discussed later.

God of the Bible further declares in Isaiah 46:9-10: “I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like Me, declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand…”

God of the Bible emphatically declares that He alone is God and there is no other God. But Krishna of the Hindus and Allah of Islam claim the same thing. Only an Omnipotent Being has the power to actually foretell the course of cities, nations, kingdoms and carry out events that span centuries or millennia. Only God can establish nations and empires and then pronounce their destruction and bring it to pass. No human can do that. The gods of all other religions have not taken up the challenge, because they are no gods but idols, or the figment of man’s imagination, or liars like Krishna, and deceived people like Mohammed of the Muslims, according to the God of the Bible.

Yes, prophecy and its fulfillment is a great proof of the existence of God. It is also proof of the divine inspiration of the holy book that contains prophecies already fulfilled in precise detail over the past nearly 6,000 years of history. Numerous prophecies are discussed in detail later in this book.

Since we can prove God exists, we can discard all religions that are entirely the philosophies of men as a poor guide on how humans should live. This means that we no longer need to waste time with atheism, secular humanism, animism, ancestor worship, atheistic communism, Buddhism, Shintoism, Taoism, Confucianism and the like to determine which holy book is the word of God.

**CHAPTER 2**

**RELIGIONS CLAIMING TO BE INSPIRED BY THE CREATOR**

Five major religions of the world claim to worship the Supreme Creator God. These are Hinduism, Islam, Christianity, Judaism and Sikhism. Here is proof from the scriptures of these religions.

***Islam***

The inspiring spirit being of Islam claims to be the Creator in the Koran. The following quotes are from the English translation of the Koran by M.H. Shakir, published by Tahrike Tarsile Qur'an, Inc., in 1983. [There are many versions of the English translation of the Koran available online. Reader may wish to check these translations for clarity of certain passages. Shakir’s translation is used throughout this book].

[2.21] O men! serve your Lord Who created you and those before you so that you may guard (against evil).

[2.22] Who made the earth a resting place for you and the heaven a canopy and (Who) sends down rain from the cloud then brings forth with it subsistence for you of the fruits; therefore, do not set up rivals to Allah while you know.

[2.28] How do you deny Allah and you were dead and He gave you life? Again, He will cause you to die and again bring you to life, then you shall be brought back to Him.

[2.29] He it is Who created for you all that is in the earth, and He directed Himself to the heaven, so He made them complete seven heavens, and He knows all things.

 [2.107] Do you not know that Allah's is the kingdom of the heavens and the earth, and that besides Allah you have no guardian or helper?

[2.117] Wonderful Originator of the heavens and the earth, and when He decrees an affair, He only says to it, Be, so there it is.

[2.255] Allah is He besides Whom there is no god, the Everliving, the Self-subsisting by Whom all subsist; slumber does not overtake Him nor sleep; whatever is in the heavens and whatever is in the earth is His; who is he that can intercede with Him but by His permission? He knows what is before them and what is behind them, and they cannot comprehend anything out of His knowledge except what He pleases, His knowledge extends over the heavens and the earth, and the preservation of them both tires Him not, and He is the Most-High, the Great.

[3.18] Allah bears witness that there is no god but He, and (so do) the angels and those possessed of knowledge, maintaining His creation with justice; there is no god but He, the Mighty, the Wise.

[7.54] Surely your Lord is Allah, Who created the heavens and the earth in six periods [or days] of time, and He is firm in power; He throws the veil of night over the day, which it pursues incessantly; and (He created) the sun and the moon and the stars, made subservient by His command; surely His is the creation and the command; blessed is Allah, the Lord of the worlds.

[10.3] Surely your Lord is Allah, Who created the heavens and the earth in six periods [days], and He is firm in power, regulating the affair, there is no intercessor except by His permission; this is Allah, your Lord, therefore serve Him; will you not then mind?

These verses leave no doubt that the “Allah” of Islam claims to be the Creator and sustainer of the universe, the heavens and the earth and all things that are in them, and he is the most-high God.

***Hinduism***

The *Bhagavat Gita*, the holy book of the Hindus quotes Lord Krishna of the Hindus as follows [translation by Sir Purohit Swami used throughout the book]:

In Chapter 3: There is nothing in this universe, O Arjuna, that I am compelled to do, nor anything for Me to attain; yet I am persistently active. For were I not to act without ceasing, O prince, people would be glad to do likewise. And if I were to refrain from action, the human race would be ruined; I should lead the world to chaos, and destruction would follow.

In Chapter 5: Knowing me as Him who gladly receives all offerings of austerity and sacrifice, as the Mighty Ruler of all the Worlds and the Friend of all beings, he passes to Eternal Peace.”

In Chapter 7: Earth, water, fire, air, ether, mind, intellect and personality; this is the eightfold division of My Manifested Nature.

“This is My inferior Nature; but distinct from this, O Valiant One, know thou that my Superior Nature is the very Life which sustains the universe. It is the womb of all being; for I am He by Whom the worlds were created and shall be dissolved.

“O Arjuna! There is nothing higher than Me; all is strung upon Me as rows of pearls upon a thread. O Arjuna! I am the Fluidity in water, the Light in the sun and in the moon. I am the mystic syllable Om in the Vedic scriptures, the Sound in ether, the Virility in man. I am the Fragrance of earth, the Brilliance of fire. I am the Life Force in all beings, and I am the Austerity of the ascetics. Know, O Arjuna, that I am the eternal Seed of being; I am the Intelligence of the intelligent, the Splendor of the resplendent. I am the Strength of the strong, of them who are free from attachment and desire; and, O Arjuna, I am the Desire for righteousness. Whatever be the nature of their life, whether it be pure or passionate or ignorant, they are all derived from Me. They are in Me, but I am not in them.

“The inhabitants of the world, misled by those natures which the Qualities have engendered, know not that I am higher than them all, and that I do not change.”

In Chapter 8: “Arjuna asked: O Lord of Lords! What is that which men call the Supreme Spirit, what is man’s Spiritual Nature, and what is the Law? What is Matter and what is Divinity? Who is it who rules the spirit sacrifice in many; and at the time of death how may those who have learned self-control come to the knowledge of Thee?

The Lord Shri Krishna replied: The Supreme Spirit is the Highest Imperishable Self, and Its Nature is spiritual consciousness. The worlds have been created and are supported by an emanation from the Spirit which is called the Law.

“Matter consists of the forms that perish; Divinity is the Supreme Self; and He who inspires the spirit of sacrifice in man, O noblest of thy race, is I Myself, Who now stand in human form before thee.”

In Chapter 9: The whole world is pervaded by Me [thus Krishna claims to be omnipresent], yet My form is not seen. All living things have their being in Me, yet I am not limited by them. Nevertheless, they do not consciously abide in Me. Such is My Divine Sovereignty that though I, the Supreme Self, am the cause and upholder of all, yet I remain outside. As the mighty wind, though moving everywhere, has no resting place but space, so have all these beings no home but Me.

“All beings, O Arjuna, return at the close of every cosmic cycle into the realm of Nature, which is a part of Me, and at the beginning of the next I send them forth again. With the help of Nature, again and again I pour forth the whole multitude of beings, whether they will or no, for they are ruled by My Will. But these acts of mine do not bind Me. I remain outside and unattached. Under my guidance, Nature produces all things movable and immovable. Thus it is, O Arjuna, that this universe revolves.

“Fools disregard Me, seeing Me clad in human form. They know not that in My higher nature I am the Lord-God of all.”

In Chapter 10: Neither the professors of divinity nor the great ascetics know My origin, for I am the source of them all. He who knows Me as the unborn, without beginning, the Lord of the universe, he, stripped of his delusion, becomes free from all conceivable sin…I am the source of all; from Me everything flows. Therefore the wise worship Me with unchanging devotion.

“O Arjuna! I am the Self, seated in the hearts of all beings; I am the beginning and the life, and I am the end of them all. Of all the creative Powers I am the Creator, of luminaries the Sun; the Whirlwind among the winds, and the Moon among planets. I am the Beginning, the Middle and the End in creation… I am Time inexhaustible; and I am the all-pervading Preserver. I am all-devouring Death; I am the Origin of all that shall happen…I am the Seed of all being, O Arjuna! No creature moving or unmoving can live without Me…O Arjuna! I sustain this universe with only small part of Myself.”

After seeing a vision of Krishna in a part of his form, in Chapter 10 Arjuna says: “Thou art the Supreme Spirit, the Eternal Home, the Holiest of the Holy, the Eternal Divine Self, the Primal God, the Unborn and the Omnipresent.”

In Chapter 12: Those who worship Me as the Indestructible, the Undefinable, the Omnipresent, the Unthinkable, the Primeval [Thus Krishna claims himself to be the primeval source of everything, meaning the original cause], the Immutable and the Eternal…”

In Chapter 15 Krishna claims: “But higher than all am I, the Supreme God, the Absolute Self, the Eternal Lord, Who pervades the worlds and upholds them all. Beyond comparison of the Eternal with the non-eternal am I, Who am called by scriptures and sages the Supreme Personality, the Highest God.”

So, in the Bhagavat Gita Lord Krishna leaves no doubt about what he claims to be: The original primeval source of all life, creator and sustainer of the universe, the Lord-God of all.

***Sikhism***

In the Sikh Scriptures known as the Guru Granth Sahib, God the Creator and Sustainer of all is not directly quoted. But the scripture claims that there is only one Supreme God who has created everything, including the other gods of the Hindus such as Shiva, Vishnu, Brahma, Indra, Krishna and goddesses such as Lakshmi and Parvati, and Buddha. The Supreme Being is the Creator and Sustainer of all of them and the entire universe.

The Guru Granth contains the sayings of the Gurus and the Muslim Sufis about the Supreme God and not direct quotes from God. The Bible, the Koran and the Bhagavat Gita on the other hand all claim to directly quote God.

Here is a gist of what the Guru Granth [translation into English by Singh Sahib Sant Singh Khalsa MD] of the Sikhs says about the Supreme God:

“One universal Creator God. The name is Truth. Creative Being personified [another translation has: ‘the All-pervading Creator’]. No fear. No hatred [or ‘without fear. Without hatred’]. Image of the undying, beyond birth [or ‘Immortal, unborn’], Self-existent. True in the primal beginning, true throughout the ages. True here and now. O Nanak [Nanak the first Sikh Guru telling himself], forever and ever true.” (Japji 1:1)

“By thinking, He cannot be reduced to thought, even by thinking hundreds of thousands of times. By His Command, bodies are created; His Command cannot be described. By His Command, souls come into being; by His Command, glory and greatness are obtained. By His Command, some are high, and some are low; by His Written Command, pain and pleasure are obtained. Some, by His Command, are blessed and forgiven; others, by His Command, wander aimlessly forever. Everyone is subject to His Command; no one is beyond His Command…one who understands His Command, does not speak in ego. (Japji 1:2)

“The Guru’s Word is the Sound-current of the Naad (those who praise God in song); the Guru’s Word is the Wisdom of the Vedas; the Guru’s Word is all-pervading. The Guru is Shiva, the Guru is Vishnu and Brahma; the Guru is Parvati and Lakshmi. Even knowing God, I cannot describe Him; He cannot be described in words. The Guru has given me this one understanding: there is only the One, the Giver of all souls. May I never forget Him!” (Japji 1:5).

“Only one as Great and as High as God can know His Lofty and Exalted State. Only He Himself is that Great. He Himself knows Himself…by His Glance of Grace, He bestows His Blessings (Japji 1:24).

P. 11: “You are the Primal Being, the Most Wonderful Creator. There is no other as Great as You. Age after age, You are the One. Forever and ever, You are the One. You never change, O Creator Lord. Everything happens according to Your Will. You Yourself accomplish all that occurs. You Yourself created the entire universe, and having fashioned it, You Yourself shall destroy it all.”

The Sikh scripture goes on to say in numerous other places that the Supreme God, the Creator and Sustainer of all is above all gods and He Himself knows Himself and no humans can describe Him. But the path to liberation or salvation is through the teaching of the gurus and worship of the only one true God.

The Guru Granth is a compilation of hymns of the Sikh Gurus and some Hindu and Muslim poets describing the qualities of the Creator God and how He should be worshipped and how salvation can be obtained. There is no doubt that the Sikhs claim to worship only one God whom they claim to be the only Creator, supreme over all gods. The Guru Granth claims that all the gods of the Hindus, including Krishna are inferior gods.

***Judaism and Christianity***

The Bible of Judaism and Christianity claims to be the Word of God and directly quotes God in many places through the prophets. And the Ten Commandments were directly spoken by God and then written on two tablets of stone. The creation account is given in the very beginning of the Bible, and reads as follows in Genesis 1 (NIV – New International Version):

“1 In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth. 2 Now the earth was formless and empty, darkness was over the surface of the deep, and the Spirit of God was hovering over the waters. 3 And God said, "Let there be light," and there was light. 4 God saw that the light was good, and he separated the light from the darkness. 5 God called the light "day," and the darkness he called "night." And there was evening, and there was morning--the first day. 6 And God said, "Let there be an expanse between the waters to separate water from water." 7 So God made the expanse and separated the water under the expanse from the water above it. And it was so. 8 God called the expanse "sky." And there was evening, and there was morning--the second day.

“9 And God said, "Let the water under the sky be gathered to one place, and let dry ground appear." And it was so. 10 God called the dry ground "land," and the gathered waters he called "seas." And God saw that it was good. 11 Then God said, "Let the land produce vegetation: seed-bearing plants and trees on the land that bear fruit with seed in it, according to their various kinds." And it was so. 12 The land produced vegetation: plants bearing seed according to their kinds and trees bearing fruit with seed in it according to their kinds. And God saw that it was good. 13 And there was evening, and there was morning--the third day.

“14 And God said, "Let there be lights in the expanse of the sky to separate the day from the night, and let them serve as signs to mark seasons and days and years, 15 and let them be lights in the expanse of the sky to give light on the earth." And it was so. 16 God made two great lights--the greater light to govern the day and the lesser light to govern the night. He also made the stars. 17 God set them in the expanse of the sky to give light on the earth, 18 to govern the day and the night, and to separate light from darkness. And God saw that it was good. 19 And there was evening, and there was morning--the fourth day.

“20 And God said, "Let the water teem with living creatures, and let birds fly above the earth across the expanse of the sky." 21 So God created the great creatures of the sea and every living and moving thing with which the water teems, according to their kinds, and every winged bird according to its kind. And God saw that it was good. 22 God blessed them and said, "Be fruitful and increase in number and fill the water in the seas, and let the birds increase on the earth." 23 And there was evening, and there was morning--the fifth day.

“24 And God said, "Let the land produce living creatures according to their kinds: livestock, creatures that move along the ground, and wild animals, each according to its kind." And it was so. 25 God made the wild animals according to their kinds, the livestock according to their kinds, and all the creatures that move along the ground according to their kinds. And God saw that it was good.

“26 Then God said, "Let us make man in our image, in our likeness, and let them rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air, over the livestock, over all the earth, and over all the creatures that move along the ground." 27 So God created man in his own image, in the image of God he created him; male and female he created them. 28God blessed them and said to them, "Be fruitful and increase in number; fill the earth and subdue it. Rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air and over every living creature that moves on the ground." 29 Then God said, "I give you every seed-bearing plant on the face of the whole earth and every tree that has fruit with seed in it. They will be yours for food. 30 And to all the beasts of the earth and all the birds of the air and all the creatures that move on the ground--everything that has the breath of life in it--I give every green plant for food." And it was so. 31 God saw all that he had made, and it was very good. And there was evening, and there was morning--the sixth day.”

Then in Genesis 2:1-3: “1 Thus the heavens and the earth were completed in all their vast array. 2 By the seventh day God had finished the work he had been doing; so on the seventh day he rested from all his work. 3 And God blessed the seventh day and made it holy, because on it he rested from all the work of creating that he had done.”

The Old Testament of the Bible is common to both Judaism and Christianity. Therefore, both religions claim they worship the true Creator God. The Bible has the most detailed account of actual creation than any of the other religions.

Thus, we see all the major religions, Islam, Hinduism, Christianity, Judaism and Sikhism talk about the one true Creator God and claim that they have the true path to salvation. All except Sikhism claim to directly quote the Creator God Himself in their scriptures.

Because all these religions claim that their God is the Creator of everything, can we choose any of these religions to follow? That would be acceptable if all of them essentially promised the same salvation. Therefore, before we can decide which religion to follow, we must first find out what is the promised reward for the devotees, or salvation according to each of these religions, and whether it makes sense.

**CHAPTER 3**

**SALVATION ACCORDING TO THE THEISTIC RELIGIONS**

One very important way to prove that the five major theistic religions differ from one another is to look at what they offer as salvation for human beings. Because we are trying to determine which holy book is the inspired word of God, it is important to compare the beliefs regarding salvation from the scriptures of the religion rather than merely the writings of scholars.

Let’s now examine what is salvation according to each religion.

**Salvation According to Islam**

Islam believes salvation means going to paradise [also called Gardens] and living forever and enjoying all the pleasures of the flesh: wine, women, food and song. And this salvation is available only to males. No such paradise is available for the female half of humanity. Those who are not granted access to paradise, burn in an everlasting hellfire. Though they feel the torture and agony of the hellfire, they are not totally consumed. Therefore, they continue to endure this torture forever.

*Reward is Gardens – paradise (with delicious food, drink, virgin companions)*

[2.111] And they say: None shall enter the garden (or paradise) except he who is a Jew or a Christian. These are their vain desires. Say: Bring your proof if you are truthful.

[89.27-30] O soul that art at rest! 28 Return to your Lord, well-pleased (with him), well-pleasing (Him), 29 So enter among My servants, 30 And enter into My garden.

[5.72] “Certainly they disbelieve who say: Surely Allah, He is the Messiah, son of Marium [Mary]; and the Messiah said: O Children of Israel! serve Allah, my Lord and your Lord. Surely whoever associates (others) with Allah, then Allah has forbidden to him the garden [paradise], and his abode is the fire [hell]; and there shall be no helpers for the unjust.”

[29.58-59] “And (as for) those who believe and do good, We will certainly give them abode in the high places in gardens beneath which rivers flow, abiding therein; how good the reward of the workers: 59 Those who are patient, and on their Lord do they rely.”

[37.40-49] “Save the servants of Allah, the purified ones. 41 For them is a known sustenance, 42 Fruits, and they shall be highly honored, 43 In gardens of pleasure, 44On thrones, facing each other. 45 A bowl shall be made to go round them from water running out of springs, 46 White, delicious to those who drink. 47 There shall be no trouble in it, nor shall they be exhausted therewith. 48 And with them shall be those who restrain the eyes, having beautiful eyes; 49 As if they were eggs carefully protected.”

[38.49-54] This is a reminder; and most surely there is an excellent resort for those who guard (against evil), 50 The gardens of perpetuity, the doors are opened for them. 51 Reclining therein, calling therein for many fruits and drink. 52 And with them shall be those restraining their eyes, equals in age. 53 This is what you are promised for the day of reckoning. 54 Most surely this is Our sustenance; it shall never come to an end…”

[39.20] But (as for) those who are careful of (their duty to) their Lord, they shall have high places, above them higher places, built (for them), beneath which flow rivers; (this is) the promise of Allah: Allah will not fail in (His) promise.

[39.73-74] “And those who are careful of (their duty to) their Lord shall be conveyed to the garden in companies; until when they come to it, and its doors shall be opened, and the keepers of it shall say to them: Peace be on you, you shall be happy; therefore enter it to abide. 74 And they shall say: (All) praise is due to Allah, Who has made good to us His promise, and He has made us inherit the land; we may abide in the garden where we please; so goodly is the reward of the workers.”

[44.51-57] Surely those who guard (against evil) are in a secure place, 52 In gardens and springs; 53 They shall wear of fine and thick silk, (sitting) face to face; 54 Thus (shall it be), and We will wed them with Houris pure [meaning virgins], beautiful ones. 55 They shall call therein for every fruit in security; 56 They shall not taste therein death except the first death, and He will save them from the punishment of the hell, 57 A grace from your Lord; this is the great achievement.”

[52.17] Surely those who guard (against evil) shall be in gardens and bliss 18 Rejoicing because of what their Lord gave them, and their Lord saved them from the punishment of the burning fire. 19 Eat and drink pleasantly for what you did, 20 Reclining on thrones set in lines, and We will unite them to large-eyed beautiful ones. 21 And (as for) those who believe, and their offspring follow them in faith, We will unite with them their offspring and We will not diminish to them aught of their work; every man is responsible for what he shall have wrought. 22 And We will aid them with fruit and flesh such as they desire.”

[56.11-40] These are they who are drawn nigh (to Allah), 12 In the gardens of bliss. 13 A numerous company from among the first, 14 And a few from among the latter. 15 On thrones decorated, 16 Reclining on them, facing one another. 17 Round about them shall go youths [young virgins] never altering in age, 18 With goblets and ewers and a cup of pure drink; 19 They shall not be affected with headache thereby, nor shall they get exhausted, 20 And fruits such as they choose, 21 And the flesh of fowl such as they desire. 22 And pure, beautiful ones, 23 The like of the hidden pearls: 24 A reward for what they used to do. 25 They shall not hear therein vain or sinful discourse, 26 Except the word peace, peace. 27 And the companions of the right hand; how happy are the companions of the right hand! 28 Amid thornless lote-trees, 29 And banana-trees (with fruits), one above another. 30 And extended shade, 31 And water flowing constantly, 32And abundant fruit, 33 Neither intercepted nor forbidden, 34 And exalted thrones. 35 Surely We have made them to grow into a (new) growth, 36 Then We have made them virgins, 37 Loving, equals in age, 38 For the sake of the companions of the right hand. 39 A numerous company from among the first, 40 And a numerous company from among the last.”

[76.11-22] “Therefore Allah will guard them from the evil of that day and cause them to meet with ease and happiness; 12 And reward them, because they were patient, with garden and silk, 13 Reclining therein on raised couches, they shall find therein neither (the severe heat of) the sun nor intense cold. 14 And close down upon them (shall be) its shadows, and its fruits shall be made near (to them), being easy to reach. 15 And there shall be made to go round about them vessels of silver and goblets which are of glass, 16 (Transparent as) glass, made of silver; they have measured them according to a measure. 17 And they shall be made to drink therein a cup the admixture of which shall be ginger, 18 (Of) a fountain therein which is named Salsabil. 19 And round about them shall go youths never altering in age; when you see them you will think them to be scattered pearls. 20 And when you see there, you shall see blessings and a great kingdom. 21 Upon them shall be garments of fine green silk and thick silk interwoven with gold, and they shall be adorned with bracelets of silver, and their Lord shall make them drink a pure drink. 22 Surely this is a reward for you, and your striving shall be recompensed.”

*Punishment - Hell*

[38.55-61] “This (shall be so); and most surely there is an evil resort for the inordinate ones; 56 Hell; they shall enter it, so evil is the resting-place. 57 This (shall be so); so let them taste it, boiling and intensely cold (drink). 58 And other (punishment) of the same kind-- of various sorts. 59 This is an army plunging in without consideration along with you; no welcome for them, surely they shall enter fire. 60 They shall say: Nay! you-- no welcome to you: you did proffer it to us, so evil is the resting-place. 61 They shall say: Our Lord! whoever prepared it first for us, add Thou to him a double chastisement in the fire.”

[39.70-72] And every soul shall be paid back fully what it has done, and He knows best what they do. 71 And those who disbelieve shall be driven to hell in companies; until, when they come to it, its doors shall be opened, and the keepers of it shall say to them: Did not there come to you apostles from among you reciting to you the communications of your Lord and warning you of the meeting of this day of yours? They shall say: Yea!

But the sentence of punishment was due against the unbelievers. 72 It shall be said: Enter the gates of hell to abide therein; so evil is the abode of the proud.”

Thus, we see Islam is quite descriptive of the paradise or gardens it promises its followers who qualify. It also promises the punishment of hell for those who do not do their duty or do not believe in Islam.

***Salvation According to Hinduism***

Hindus believe that human souls are immortal and get their chance of salvation when they come in human form. If they do not qualify for salvation in their human life, their soul at death then transmigrates into the body of another creature. It transmigrates into 8.4 million different creatures – such as animals, birds, insects and the tiniest of creatures – before getting another chance to be born as a human being to get another chance for salvation. This cycle of transmigration continues until the immortal soul qualifies for salvation. Salvation then is being merged into the Great Soul that is God from which it had originally separated.

The following scriptural references again are from the Bhagavat Gita, the holy book of the Hindus.

Chapter 2, p 4-5:

“Why grieve for those for whom no grief is due, and yet profess wisdom? The wise grieve neither for the dead nor the living. There was never a time when I was not, nor thou, nor these princes were not; there will never be a time when we shall cease to be. As the soul experiences in this body infancy, youth and old age, so finally it passes into another. The wise have no delusion about this.

“Those external relations which bring cold and heat, pain and happiness, they come and go; they are not permanent. Endure them bravely, O Prince [Krishna here refers to Arjuna as prince]. The hero whose soul is unmoved by circumstance, who accepts pleasure and pain with equanimity, only he is fit for immortality.

“That which is not, shall never be; that which is, shall never cease to be. To the wise, these truths are self-evident.

“The Spirit, which pervades all that we see, is imperishable. Nothing can destroy the Spirit. The material bodies which this Eternal, Indestructible, Immeasurable Spirit inhabits are all finite. Therefore fight, O Valiant Man! He who thinks that the Spirit kills, and he who thinks of It as killed, are both ignorant. The Spirit kills not, nor is It killed.

“It was not born; It will never die, nor once having been, can It cease to be. Unborn, Eternal, Ever-enduring, yet Most Ancient, the Spirit dies not when the body is dead. He who knows the Spirit as Indestructible, Immortal, Unborn, Always-the-Same, how should he kill or cause to be killed?

“As a man discards his threadbare robes and puts on new, so the Spirit throws off Its worn-out bodies and takes fresh ones.”

Chapter 4 p. 12:

Lord Shri Krishna…: *I have been born again and again, from time to time; thou too, O Arjuna! My births are known to Me, but thou knowest not thine.* I have no beginning. Though I am imperishable, as well as Lord of all that exists, yet by My own will and power do I manifest Myself. Whenever spirituality decays and materialism is rampant, then, O Arjuna, I reincarnate Myself!

“To protect the righteous, to destroy the wicked and to establish the kingdom of God, I am reborn from age to age. *He who realizes the divine truth concerning My birth and life is not born again; and when he leaves his body, he becomes one with Me. Many have merged their existences in Mine,* being freed from desire, fear and anger, filled always with Me and purified by the illuminating flame of self-abnegation. Howsoever men try to worship Me, so do I welcome them. By whatever path they travel, it leads to Me at last.”

Chapter 9: p 25:

“Those who are versed in the scriptures, who drink the mystic Soma-juice and are purified from sin, but who while worshipping Me with sacrifices pray that I will lead them to heaven; they reach the holy world where lives the Controller of the Powers of Nature, and they enjoy the feasts of Paradise. Yet although they enjoy the spacious glories of Paradise, nevertheless, when their merit is exhausted, they are born again into this world of mortals. They have followed the letter of the scriptures, yet because they have sought but to fulfill their own desires, they must depart and return again and again [meaning go through the cycle of birth death and rebirth].

“But if a man will meditate on Me and Me alone, and will worship Me always and everywhere, I will take upon Myself the fulfillment of his aspiration, and I will safeguard whatsoever he shall attain.

“Even those who worship the lesser Powers, if they do so with faith, they thereby worship Me, though not in the right way. I am the willing recipient of sacrifice, and I am its true Lord. But these do not know me in truth, and so they sink back. The votaries of the lesser Powers go to them; the devotees of spirits go to them; they who worship the Powers of Darkness, to such Powers shall they go; and so, too, those who worship Me shall come to Me.”

Chapter 8: p 22-23:

“Whosoever at the time of death thinks only of Me, and thinking thus leaves the body and goes forth, assuredly he will know Me. On whatever sphere of being the mind of a man may be intent at the time of death, thither he will go.

“Therefore, meditate always on Me, and fight; if thy mind and thy reason be fixed on Me, to Me shalt thou surely come. He whose mind does not wander, and who is engaged in constant meditation, attains the Supreme Spirit.

“Whoso meditates on the Omniscient, the Ancient…He who leaves the body with mind unmoved and filled with devotion, by the power of his meditation gathering between his eyebrows his whole vital energy, attains the Supreme.

“Now I will speak briefly of the imperishable goal, proclaimed by those versed in the scriptures, which the mystic attains when free from passion, and for which he is content to undergo the vow of continence. Closing the gates of the body, drawing the forces of his mind into the heart and by the power of meditation concentrating his vital energy in the brain; Repeating Om, the Symbol of Eternity, holding Me always in remembrance, he who thus leaves his body and goes forth reaches the Spirit Supreme.

“To him who thinks constantly of Me, and of nothing else, to such an ever-faithful devotee, O Arjuna, am I ever accessible. Coming thus unto Me, these great souls go no more to the misery and death of earthly life, for they have gained perfection. The worlds, with the whole realm of creation, come and go; but, O Arjuna, who so comes to Me, for him there is no *death nor rebirth*.”

Here is what Krishna says will happen to one who slips from the path of spirituality:

Chapter 6, p 19:

“My beloved child! There is no destruction for him, either in this world or in the next. No evil fate awaits him who treads the path of righteousness.

“Having reached the worlds where the righteous dwell, and having remained there for

many years, he who has slipped from the path of spirituality *will be born again* in the

family of the pure, benevolent and prosperous. Or, he may be born in the family of the wise sages, though a birth like this is, indeed, very difficult to obtain.

“Then the experience acquired in his former life will revive, and with its help he will strive

for perfection more eagerly than before. Unconsciously he will return to the practices of his old life; so that he who tries to realize spiritual consciousness is certainly superior to one who only talks of it. Then after many lives, the student of spirituality, who earnestly strives, and whose sins are absolved, attains perfection and reaches the Supreme.”

In contrast, here is what Krishna says will happen to those who are given to passion and evil:

Chapter 14:44: “Puffed up by power and inordinate conceit, swayed by lust and wrath, these wicked people hate Me Who am within them, as I am within all. Those who thus hate Me, who are cruel, the dregs of mankind, I condemn them to a continuous, miserable and godless rebirth. So reborn, they spend life after life, enveloped in delusion. And they never reach Me, O Prince, but degenerate into still lower forms of life.”

Hinduism thus leaves no doubt about what salvation is: being freed from the cycle of birth and death and merging his or her existence with the Creator God. Though the Bhagavat Gita, the Ramayana or the Mahabharata do not seem to contain the figure of 8.4 million creatures that exist into which humans can be reborn, the number comes from other Hindu literature; in this case the Padma Purana.

***Salvation According to Sikhism***

Salvation in Sikhism is the same as in Hinduism. Hinduism claims that you can take different paths to salvation whereas Sikhism maintains that the path to salvation is meditation, non-attachment and to sing the praises of the Eternal Creator God. This can be done with the help of the guru [or teacher like Nanak and the other gurus].

Here are some of the passages from the Guru Granth that describe salvation in Sikhism from the translation into English by Singh Sahib Sant Singh Khalsa MD:

P 11: “Those who meditate on You, Lord, those who meditate on You—those humble beings dwell in peace in this world. They are liberated, they are liberated—those who meditate on the Lord. For them, the noose of death is cut away. Those who meditate on the Fearless One, on the Fearless Lord—all their fears are dispelled. Those who serve, those who serve my Dear Lord, are absorbed into the Being of the Lord…Blessed are they, blessed are they, who meditate on their Dear Lord.”

P. 18: “As metal merges with metal, those who chant the Praises of the Lord are absorbed into the Praiseworthy Lord.”

P 19: “Some are very knowledgeable, but if they do not know the Guru, then what is the use of their lives? The blind have forgotten the Naam [the praise of the Name of the Lord]. The self-willed manmukhs [those who are engrossed in the world as contrasted with gurmukhs who are engrossed in learning from the Guru] are in utter darkness. *Their comings and goings in reincarnation do not end; through death and rebirth, they are wasting away.* By true actions, the True Lord is met, and the Guru’s Teachings are found. Then, *they are not subject to birth and death; they do not come and go in reincarnation.*

“Without the Word of the Shabad [songs of praise to God], people wander lost in reincarnation…O mind, swim across, by focusing your consciousness on the Shabad. Those who do not become Gurmukh do not understand the Naam; they die and continue coming and going in reincarnation. That body is said to be pure, in which the True Name abides. One whose body is imbued with the Fear of the True One, and whose tongue savors Truthfulness, is brought to ecstasy by the True Lord’s Glance of Grace. That person does not have to go through the fire of the womb again.”

P 23: “Practicing falsehood again and again, people come and go in *reincarnation*, and forfeit their honor.”

P. 370: “Servant Nanak chants the wisdom of God; one who listens and practices it, is *carried across [the Ocean of the World] and saved*. He is not born, and he does not die; he does not come or go. *He remains blended [merged] with the Lord*.”

P 378: “You have been blessed with this human body. This is your chance to meet the Lord of the Universe. Other efforts are of no use to you. Join the Saadh Sangat [the Company of the Holy] and meditate on the Naam [the Name of the Lord]. *Make the effort, and cross over the terrifying world ocean.* This human life is passing away in vain, in the love of Maya” [materialism].

P 1427: “He has given you your body, wealth, property, peace and beautiful mansions. Says Nanak, listen, mind: why don’t you remember the Lord in meditation? The Lord is the Giver of all peace and comfort. There is no other at all. Says Nanak, listen, mind: meditating in remembrance on Him, salvation is attained. *Remembering Him in meditation, salvation is attained*; meditate on Him, O my friend. Says Nanak, listen, mind: your life is passing away!...Believe it — *you shall merge once again into the One*, O Nanak, *from whom you originated*. The Dear Lord abides in each and every heart; the Saints proclaim this as true. Says Nanak, meditate…upon Him, and you shall cross over the terrifying world-ocean.”

P 111: “He created the 8.4 million species of beings. Those, upon whom He casts His Glance of Grace, come to meet the Guru. Shedding the residues of their sinful mistakes, His servants are forever pure; at the True Court, they are beautified by the Naam [praises of the Name of the Lord]. || 6 || When they are called to settle their accounts, who will answer then? There shall be no peace then, from counting out by twos and threes. The True Lord God Himself forgives, and having forgiven, *He unites them with Himself*.”

P. 1426: "He has given you a body, wealth, property, peace and beautiful mansions. Nanak says, listen mind: why don't you remember God and meditate on Him? The Lord is the provider of all peace and comfort. There is no other at all. Nanak says, listen mind: *salvation is attained by meditating on Him*" (Guru Granth, p. 1426).

"One who is not touched by pleasure, pain, greed, emotional attachment and egotistical pride; Nanak says, listen mind: he is the very image of God. One who is beyond praise and slander, and looks upon gold and iron alike; Nanak says, listen mind: know that such a person attains salvation. One who is not affected by pleasure or pain, and looks upon friend and enemy alike; Nanak says, listen mind: know that such a person attains salvation" (Guru Granth, p. 1427).

These scriptures describe salvation according to Sikhism. The ultimate goal is to end the cycle of birth and death and merge with the Creator God. Being born as a human being is an opportunity to do that. Those who pursue materialism are unable to do so. They must go through the cycle of birth and death as one of the 8.4 million species of creatures before they will get another chance to be reincarnated as a human being and earn salvation.

***Salvation According to Judaism***

Judaism, except for the Messianic Jews, has only the Old Testament of the Bible and does not believe in Jesus Christ as the promised Messiah and the New Testament. Hence the salvation that the Jews believe in is different from the salvation the Christians believe in.

Jews believe that they are God’s chosen people according to the Covenant God made with ancient Israel at the time of Moses after they came out of Egypt. Exodus 20:2 (NIV) states: "I am the Lord your God, who brought you out of Egypt, out of the land of slavery."

Deuteronomy 7:6 (NIV) states: "For you are a people holy to the Lord your God. The Lord your God has chosen you out of all the peoples on the face of the earth to be his people, his treasured possession."

The Covenant was made with the people as well as their descendants in Deuteronomy 29:10-15, "10 You stand this day all of you before the Lord your God; your captains of your tribes, your elders, and your officers, with all the men of Israel, 11 Your little ones, your wives, and the stranger that is in your camp, from the hewer of your wood unto the drawer of your water: 12 That you should enter into covenant with the Lord your God, and into his oath, which the Lord your God makes with you this day: 13 That he may establish you today for a people unto himself, and that he may be unto you a God, as he has said unto you, and as he has sworn unto your fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. 14 Neither with you only do I make this covenant and this oath; 15 But with him that stands here with us this day before the Lord our God, and also with him that is not here with us this day:”

For the Jews salvation is collective for the nation of Israel rather than personal and individual. The salvation of the individual is connected with the salvation of Israel. Judaism believes based on many prophecies in the prophets that just as ancient Israel was saved out of Egypt, Israel will again be saved from its enemies to freely live in its land, restored to greatness as a nation with a new covenant between God and Israel, restoration of the Temple and sacrifices and its worship system, and all nations living peacefully under the God of Israel.

Jeremiah 31:7-14 (NKJV – New King James Version) describes the restoration of Israel to greatness:

“7 For thus says the Lord: "Sing with gladness for Jacob, and shout among the chief of the nations; Proclaim, give praise, and say, 'O Lord, save Your people, the remnant of Israel!' 8 Behold, I will bring them from the north country, and gather them from the ends of the earth, among them the blind and the lame, the woman with child and the one who labors with child, together; a great throng shall return there. 9 They shall come with weeping, and with supplications I will lead them. I will cause them to walk by the rivers of waters, in a straight way in which they shall not stumble; for I am a Father to Israel, and Ephraim is My firstborn.

“10 "Hear the word of the Lord, O nations, and declare it in the isles afar off, and say, 'He who scattered Israel will gather him, and keep him as a shepherd does his flock.' 11 For the Lord has redeemed Jacob, and ransomed him from the hand of one stronger than he. 12 Therefore they shall come and sing in the height of Zion, streaming to the goodness of the Lord-- for wheat and new wine and oil, for the young of the flock and the herd; their souls shall be like a well-watered garden, and they shall sorrow no more at all. 13 "Then shall the virgin rejoice in the dance, and the young men and the old, together; for I will turn their mourning to joy, will comfort them, and make them rejoice rather than sorrow. 14 I will satiate the soul of the priests with abundance, and My people shall be satisfied with My goodness, says the Lord."

In verses 31-34 God promises to make a New Covenant with the house of Israel and the House of Judah:

“31 "Behold, the days are coming, says the Lord, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah- 32 not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day that I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt, My covenant which they broke, though I was a husband to them, says the Lord. 33 But this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, says the Lord: I will put My law in their minds, and write it on their hearts; and I will be their God, and they shall be My people. 34 No more shall every man teach his neighbor, and every man his brother, saying, 'Know the Lord,' for they all shall know Me, from the least of them to the greatest of them, says the Lord. For I will forgive their iniquity, and their sin I will remember no more."

As prophesied by the prophets, Jews expect God to restore them collectively to greatness as a nation when the entire world will look to them for spiritual guidance.

Micah 4:1-4, “1 Now it shall come to pass in the latter days that the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established on the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and peoples shall flow to it. 2 Many nations shall come and say, "Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; He will teach us His ways, and we shall walk in His paths." For out of Zion the law shall go forth, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem. 3 He shall judge between many peoples, and rebuke strong nations afar off; they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning hooks; nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war anymore. 4 But everyone shall sit under his vine and under his fig tree, and no one shall make them afraid; for the mouth of the Lord of hosts has spoken…”

Zechariah 8:20-23, “20 Thus says the Lord of hosts; It shall yet come to pass, that there shall come people, and the inhabitants of many cities: 21 And the inhabitants of one city shall go to another, saying, Let us go speedily to pray before the LORD, and to seek the Lord of hosts: I will go also. 22 Yea, many people and strong nations shall come to seek the Lord of hosts in Jerusalem, and to pray before the Lord. 23 Thus says the Lord of hosts; In those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold out of all languages of the nations, even shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you: for we have heard that God is with you.”

Moses mentioned this in Deuteronomy 30:1-10 (NKJV):

“1 "Now it shall come to pass, when all these things come upon you, the blessing and the curse which I have set before you, and you call them to mind among all the nations where the Lord your God drives you, 2 and you return to the Lord your God and obey His voice, according to all that I command you today, you and your children, with all your heart and with all your soul, 3 that the Lord your God will bring you back from captivity, and have compassion on you, and gather you again from all the nations where the Lord your God has scattered you. 4 If any of you are driven out to the farthest parts under heaven, from there the Lord your God will gather you, and from there He will bring you. 5 Then the Lord your God will bring you to the land which your fathers possessed, and you shall possess it. He will prosper you and multiply you more than your fathers.

“6 And the Lord your God will circumcise your heart and the heart of your descendants, to love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul, that you may live. 7 Also the Lord your God will put all these curses on your enemies and on those who hate you, who persecuted you. 8 And you will again obey the voice of the Lord and do all His commandments which I command you today. 9 The Lord your God will make you abound in all the work of your hand, in the fruit of your body, in the increase of your livestock, and in the produce of your land for good. For the Lord will again rejoice over you for good as He rejoiced over your fathers, 10 if you obey the voice of the Lord your God, to keep His commandments and His statutes which are written in this Book of the Law, and if you turn to the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul.”

A belief in the afterlife through a resurrection has developed with the writings of the prophets and in the psalms.

Daniel the prophet mentions the resurrection in Daniel 12:2-3, “2 And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt. 3 And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever.”

Ezekiel 37:21-28 mentions David again being set up as King over Israel and the Temple being established:

“21 And say unto them, Thus says the Lord God; Behold, I will take the children of Israel from among the heathen [non-Israelite nations], whither they be gone, and will gather them on every side, and bring them into their own land: 22 And I will make them one nation in the land upon the mountains of Israel; and one king shall be king to them all: and they shall be no more two nations, neither shall they be divided into two kingdoms any more at all: 23 Neither shall they defile themselves any more with their idols, nor with their detestable things, nor with any of their transgressions: but I will save them out of all their dwelling places, wherein they have sinned, and will cleanse them: so shall they be my people, and I will be their God. 24 And David my servant shall be king over them; and they all shall have one shepherd: they shall also walk in my judgments, and observe my statutes, and do them. 25 And they shall dwell in the land that I have given unto Jacob my servant, wherein your fathers have dwelt; and they shall dwell therein, even they, and their children, and their children's children for ever: and my servant David shall be their prince forever.

“26 Moreover I will make a covenant of peace with them; it shall be an everlasting covenant with them: and I will place them, and multiply them, and will set my sanctuary in the midst of them for evermore. 27 My tabernacle also shall be with them: yea, I will be their God, and they shall be my people. 28 And the heathen shall know that I the Lord do sanctify Israel, when my sanctuary shall be in the midst of them for evermore.”

The Sadducees in Jesus’ days discussed the resurrection with Him and He corrected their misconceptions about it. The discussion is mentioned in Matthew 22, Mark 12 and Luke 20.

Matthew 22:23-32, “23 The same day came to him the Sadducees, which say that there is no resurrection [whereas the other sect, the Pharisees believed in the resurrection], and asked him, 24 Saying, Master, Moses said, If a man die, having no children, his brother shall marry his wife, and raise up seed unto his brother. 25 Now there were with us seven brethren: and the first, when he had married a wife, deceased, and, having no issue, left his wife unto his brother: 26 Likewise the second also, and the third, unto the seventh. 27 And last of all the woman died also. 28 Therefore in the resurrection whose wife shall she be of the seven? for they all had her. 29 Jesus answered and said unto them, You do err, not knowing the scriptures, nor the power of God. 30 For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are as the angels of God in heaven. 31 But as touching the resurrection of the dead, have you not read that which was spoken unto you by God, saying, 32 I am the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob? God is not the God of the dead, but of the living.”

However, the ideas of the Jews [except the Messianic Jews who believe in Jesus Christ] about the afterlife and the resurrection are still hazy because their understanding is based on the writings of the prophets. Jesus’ disciples understanding of the afterlife based on the Old Testament was also hazy until Jesus clarified it for them. That is why Jesus mentioned in Matthew 13:17: “For verily [or truly] I say unto you, that many prophets and righteous men [Luke 10:24 adds ‘kings’] have desired to see those things which you see, and have not seen them; and to hear those things which you hear, and have not heard them.”

With only the Old Testament scriptures as a guide, the disciples had only hazy ideas about eternal life and the resurrection, and the reestablishment of Israel as a great nation on earth. But the resurrection and the kingdom of God were indelibly ingrained in the minds of the apostles and Jesus’ other disciples when they saw Jesus Christ after His resurrection and explained the kingdom of God to them. Then they saw and understood what the prophets, righteous men and kings had desired to see but had not seen.

Thus, salvation for the Jews means God forgiving their sins, restoring their national blessings as a great nation with the Temple built in Jerusalem and the world coming to worship God in Jerusalem and seeking spiritual guidance from the Jews.

***Salvation According to Mainstream Christianity***

Christianity has over 2,000 major denominations and then further, more than 30,000 groups within them because they have differences of beliefs among themselves. But one thing is common to all of Christianity: the centrality of Jesus Christ to salvation.

Christians believe that “23 …all have sinned and come short of the glory of God (Romans 3:23). As a result, they believe they are all subject to the death penalty because Romans 6:23 says, “23 …the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.”

Salvation for the Christian is forgiveness of his sins so that he can qualify for eternal life. All have sinned. But because Jesus Christ was the Creator and God of the Old Testament who created everything, His life was more valuable than all His creation put together. The God of the Old Testament emptied Himself of His divinity and came to earth as the human being Jesus Christ. He lived a sinless life and did not earn the death penalty. But He died so that He could pay the death penalty on behalf of all His creation. Because He paid the death penalty, all of humanity’s sins can be forgiven and they can now qualify to receive eternal life as a free gift as stated in Romans 6:23. Salvation for the Christian therefore is having his sins forgiven and receiving the free gift of eternal life. But that is where the differences between different Christian denominations begin.

The first major issue dividing Christians in their beliefs is how they can qualify to receive eternal life, and how many will qualify to receive it. Some believe only a few qualify whereas others believe many will qualify. Christians also believe there is some time limit before which people can accept the sacrifice of Jesus Christ as forgiveness of their sins. After that time limit there will be judgment. Those who qualify to receive eternal life will receive it. Others will not.

The second major issue dividing Christians is “what is the form of eternal life the Christian qualifies for?” Some believe the immortal Christian is a physical human being who never dies, whereas others believe that the immortal Christian receives another type of body, a spirit body.

Then the third major issue causing some division among Christians is “What happens when the Christian receives eternal life?” Most of Christianity agrees on this. They believe that those who qualify to receive eternal life go to heaven where God dwells. It is supposed to be a place of unspeakable joy and happiness. There is some disagreement on what we are supposed to do when we get to heaven. Some believe that we will spend eternity on the clouds plucking our harps and enjoying celestial music. Others believe that we will gaze on the face of God for eternity and find unsurpassable joy in doing so.

As proof that the reward of the saved is heaven, Christians cite the following scriptures:

John 14:2 “2 In my Father's house [which is in heaven] are many mansions [offices or positions of responsibility]: if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you.”

2 Corinthians 5:8 “8 We are confident, I say, and willing rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with the Lord [Jesus Christ, Who at present is seated in heaven at the right hand of God the Father].”

Philippians 1:21-23 (NIV) “21 For to me, to live is Christ and to die is gain. 22 If I am to go on living in the body, this will mean fruitful labor for me. Yet what shall I choose? I do not know! 23 I am torn between the two: I desire to depart and be with Christ, which is better by far.”

Philippians 3:20-21 (NKJV) “20 For our citizenship is in heaven, from which we also eagerly wait for the Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ, 21 who will transform our lowly body that it may be conformed to His glorious body, according to the working by which He is able even to subdue all things to Himself.”

Revelation 21:4: “4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.”

Revelation 22:1-5 (NKJV): “1 And he showed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding from the throne of God and of the Lamb. 2 In the middle of its street, and on either side of the river, was the tree of life, which bore twelve fruits, each tree yielding its fruit every month. The leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations. 3 And there shall be no more curse, but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it, and His servants shall serve Him. 4 They shall see His face, and His name shall be on their foreheads. 5 There shall be no night there: they need no lamp nor light of the sun, for the Lord God gives them light. And they shall reign forever and ever.”

According to mainstream Christianity this supposedly describes heaven.

As further support, they cite several other experiences of godly men in the Bible.

2 Kings 2:11, “11 And it came to pass, as they still went on, and talked, that, behold, there appeared a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, and parted them both asunder; and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven.”

As Jesus hung on the cross, He told one of the criminals hung with Him in Luke 23:43 (NKJV), “43 And Jesus said to him, "Assuredly, I say to you, today you will be with Me in Paradise."

According to mainstream Christianity the wicked are punished by being sent to hell and tortured there for eternity. They cite the following scriptures in support for this belief:

Matthew 10:28, “28 And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.”

Revelation 14:9-11, “9 And the third angel followed them, saying with a loud voice, If any man worship the beast and his image, and receive his mark in his forehead, or in his hand, 10 The same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb: 11 And the smoke of their torment ascends up for ever and ever: and they have no rest day nor night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever receives the mark of his name.”

2 Thessalonians 1:4-9, “4 So that we ourselves glory in you in the churches of God for your patience and faith in all your persecutions and tribulations that you endure: 5 Which is a manifest token of the righteous judgment of God, that you may be counted worthy of the kingdom of God, for which you also suffer: 6 Seeing it is a righteous thing with God to recompense tribulation to them that trouble you; 7 And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels, 8 In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ: 9 Who shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power.”

Revelation 19:20, “20 And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone.”

Luke 16:19-31, “19 There was a certain rich man, which was clothed in purple and fine linen, and fared sumptuously every day: 20 And there was a certain beggar named Lazarus, which was laid at his gate, full of sores, 21 and desiring to be fed with the crumbs which fell from the rich man's table: moreover the dogs came and licked his sores.

“22 And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died and was buried; 23 And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments, and sees Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. 24 And he cried and said, Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame. 25 But Abraham said, Son, remember that you in your lifetime received your good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things: but now he is comforted, and you are tormented. 26 And beside all this, between us and you there is a great gulf fixed: so that they which would pass from hence to you cannot; neither can they pass to us, that would come from thence.

“27 Then he said, I pray to you therefore, father that you would send him to my father's house: 28 For I have five brethren; that he may testify unto them, lest they also come into this place of torment. 29 Abraham says unto him, They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them. 30 And he said, Nay, father Abraham: but if one went unto them from the dead, they will repent. 31 And he said unto him, if they hear not Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded, though one rose from the dead.”

Mainstream Christianity does believe in some sort of hell, but there is wide disagreement over it. It is impossible to reconcile the idea of a merciful Creator God whose basic character is LOVE for His creation tormenting sinners for eternity in the worst possible way in an ever-burning hell, but their bodies never really being consumed.

**Do These Concepts of Salvation Make Sense**

Do you know that all religions which believe in a higher power believe that salvation is only for their religion? Catholicism believes that salvation is only for Catholics. All others will burn in hell for eternity without being consumed. Protestants believe that Catholics don’t get their beliefs from the Bible. Hence it is not true Christianity. They believe they are the true Christians and salvation is only for them.

The Jews believe that they are a chosen people and they will be the leading nation on earth. They believe salvation is only for them. But their ideas are hazy and leave many unanswered questions.

Islam believes that salvation is only through Islam, and very few will qualify. All others will burn in hell forever.

Sikhs believe that salvation is only for Sikhs, the Khalsa, the pure. Hinduism believes that salvation can be obtained through good deeds by anyone, but worship of their gods, who are the true gods, is essential for obtaining salvation. Then there is the German nation, which now openly acknowledges that Satan is their god. They believe that they are a special creation and are the only ones who have the divine spark in them. They are the only ones who can escape the human body that entraps the divine soul in them. Rest of humanity is mere creatures like animals and insects. When they die, that will be the end of their lives. But the Germans will escape this physical body and obtain salvation.

Important question is: Do these ideas of salvation in different religions make sense?

Islam offers an idea of paradise where one can enjoy all fleshly pleasures forever. Those in paradise will be able to eat, drink, listen to great music and enjoy sex all day long for eternity. They will have nothing else to do. Can you imagine spending eternity enjoying pleasures of the flesh with nothing else to do? But this reward is offered only to a tiny portion of male half of humanity. Can you imagine God creating humanity male and female and then offering salvation only to one half of His creation? And since only a few will qualify for this salvation, most of the rest of humanity will be tormented forever in an ever-burning hell. Can you imagine a Creator God creating His creation and then subjecting most of it to be tormented forever in pain and suffering? What a sadist God is pictured to be in Islam? Salvation in Islam thus does not make sense.

Now consider salvation offered by Hinduism and Sikhism, which is essentially the same in both religions. The goal or salvation offered to the Hindu and Sikh is to have his immortal soul be free from the cycle of birth and death as 8.4 million different creatures and merge with the great supreme soul from whom he was originally separated. Ask what purpose could God have had in creating creatures, have them go through birth and death through 8.4 million species of creatures till finally they can be born as a human being to obtain the chance to qualify for salvation through good deeds, and or worship of the Creator God and finally merge with Him? Why would God separate something from Himself (the so-called immortal soul) to create living creatures and then have them merge with Him? And why should the immortal soul be put through the horror of living life as 8.4 million creatures before getting the chance to qualify to merge with the supreme God? And it may not qualify for this ‘reward’ even in hundreds of such chances. It would be condemned to go through the same cycle one more time. The god of Hinduism appears to be a sadist as well.

Salvation in Judaism is only for the Jews. But their ideas of salvation are hazy. There are many unanswered questions. Where does the resurrection mentioned by Daniel the prophet in Daniel 12 and by Ezekiel the prophet in Ezekiel 37, which is a vision of the whole house of Israel being resurrected to physical life, fit in in the Jewish scheme of salvation? Such issues are still unresolved in Judaism. Can you imagine all those of the House of Israel who have ever lived being resurrected to live as human beings and then having children and this continuing forever? Eventually humanity will run out of land on earth. Would God design such a plan guaranteed to ultimately lead to destruction? Again, ideas of salvation in Judaism are hazy because they only have the Old Testament to rely on.

Jesus Christ’s statement to His disciples explained why their understanding of the afterlife based on the Old Testament was hazy until Jesus clarified it for them. He said in Matthew 13:17: “For verily [or truly] I say unto you, that many prophets and righteous men [Luke 10:24 adds ‘kings’] have desired to see those things which you see, and have not seen them; and to hear those things which you hear, and have not heard them.” The Old Testament simply does not give a complete picture about God’s plan for humanity as explained in the pages of the Bible. That’s why Jewish ideas on salvation still remain hazy.

However, from the ideas of salvation as interpreted from the Bible, it seems that mainstream Christianity may not be faring any better than Islam, Hinduism or Sikhism. Does the idea of going to heaven and gazing at God’s face for eternity, or alternately plucking harps on clouds and listening to celestial music for eternity sound appealing to anyone? Eternity is a very very very long time. It is never-ending. John MacArthur in his book *“The Glory of Heaven”* p. 49 said that if this is all they are to do forever, then the prayer of many could be: “Please God, don’t take me to heaven yet…I haven’t even been to Hawaii!”

And then there is hell to contend with. Can you imagine God creating humanity where a large portion will end up in hell tortured for eternity? And the agony will be felt deeply even by those in ‘heaven’ because they are sure to have some relatives, possibly their own children or spouse or parents, consigned to hell for eternity. Thus, the idea of going to heaven as salvation or being consigned to hell does not make sense. It is not appealing to most.

***Salvation According to the Church of God***

The problem with mainstream Christianity’s idea of going to heaven or hell at the end of one’s life is that it is based on an incorrect interpretation of the various passages in the Bible. We will not go into a detailed proof of this in this book because proof has been provided in detail in the United Church of God booklet *“Heaven & Hell: What Does the Bible Really Teach?”* It is available free of charge to read download or order a printed copy at the Church’s web site www.ucg.org. All literature provided by God’s Church is free of charge, without any cost or obligation.

Essentially the confusion arises because the Bible mentions 3 heavens and 3 places called hell. The 3 heavens are, 1) The earth’s atmosphere, 2) Where celestial bodies such as the sun, moon, stars and galaxies are located, and 3) Where God’s throne is located. In interpreting some of the passages mainstream Christian denominations confuse one with the other.

Similarly, in the Bible 3 kinds of words are translated as hell, 1) The grave (translated from the Hebrew word *sheol* or the Greek word *hades*), 2) place of restraint or imprisonment for the angels on earth (translated from the Greek word *tartaros,* mentioned only once in the Bible), and 3) Lake of Fire (translated from the Greek word *gahenna*, referring to the Valley of Hinnom).

The truth according to the Bible as proved in the UCG booklet is that humans do not go to heaven on death. Jesus’ plain statement in John 3:13 is, “13 And no man has ascended up to heaven, but he that came down from heaven, even the Son of man which is in heaven.” If no man has ascended to heaven, then humans do not go to heaven at death. hus, heaven cannot be the reward received by any who have died.

Many believe that they will go to heaven at death because Matthew mentions the Kingdom of Heaven’ many times in his gospel. For example, Matthew 5:3 states, “3 Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.” He is the only writer who uses the term ‘kingdom of heaven.’ For the same situation Luke and other writers use the term ‘Kingdom of God.’ Luke 6:20 states, “Blessed be you poor: for yours is the kingdom of God.” When using the term ‘kingdom of heaven’ Matthew does not refer to God’s kingdom being in heaven. It is not in heaven, but of heaven because at present the King resides in Heaven.

These and many other passages interpreted by mainstream Christianity to support its belief that the reward of the saved is going to heaven are explained in detail in the booklet.

The booklet also thoroughly explains that the punishment of the incorrigibly wicked is not to burn in hell (*gahenna* or Lake of Fire) and be tortured forever. A merciful Creator God would not create beings with a plan of salvation that could potentially torture most of humanity forever. But the Bible does mention a real hell fire or Lake of Fire into which the wicked will be cast who do not repent of their sins and accept the sacrifice of Jesus Christ as payment of the death penalty on their behalf. These wicked will burn up and be consumed in the fire. Their death is permanent and will last forever. Such people are not tormented forever in the Lake of Fire. Their lives are simply extinguished forever.

Salvation thus according to the Bible as understood by the Church of God is NOT going to heaven as a reward. Nor is the punishment being tortured forever in a burning hell. The punishment definitely is burning in a fire and the body and soul being consumed together (Matthew 10:28, “28 And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell [*gehenna]*). Once the body and soul are consumed and turned into ashes, there is no more torment.

In contrast to the ideas of mainstream Christianity about Christians going to heaven or hell, God’s Church believes in the return of Jesus Christ to earth very soon to set up the Kingdom of God. At His return, the saints that God has called through the first 6,000 years of man’s history will be resurrected to eternal life as God’s literal sons and daughters with a body like that of Jesus Christ Himself, and will reign with Him on earth.

This is stated in 1 John 3:1-2, “1 Behold, what manner of love the Father has bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knows us not, because it knew him not. 2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it does not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him [meaning have a spirit body like that of Jesus Christ]; for we shall see him as he is.”

1 Corinthians 15:47, 49 say the same thing, “47 The first man is of the earth, earthy: the second man is the Lord from heaven. 48 As is the earthy, such are they also that are earthy: and as is the heavenly, such are they also that are heavenly. 49 And as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly.”

Our reward is **not** going to heaven with Jesus Christ but reigning on earth with Him. This is stated in Revelation 5:10, “10 And has made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth.”

Revelation 20:4-6, “4 And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them: and I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years. 5 But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished. This is the first resurrection. 6 Blessed and holy is he that has part in the first resurrection: on such the second death [that in the *gahenna* fire] has no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years.”

God’s plan of salvation according to the Bible is pictured in the seven annual holy days that God’s Church celebrates. The first holy day is the Passover which pictures the sacrifice of Jesus Christ as the Lamb of God for the sins of mankind. The second festival is the seven-day Feast of Unleavened Bread which pictures the putting away of sin out of our lives. Sin is defined as transgression (violation) of God’s Law (1 John 3:4).

The third holy day is called the Pentecost which pictures God calling into His Church only a limited few (called saints) during mankind’s first 6,000 years of history. They get their one and only chance to qualify to receive eternal life through the first resurrection at the return of Jesus Christ.

The fourth holy day is the Feast of Trumpets which pictures the return of Jesus Christ to earth and the resurrection of the saints to eternal life as immortal sons of God.

The fifth holy day is the Day of Atonement which pictures the putting away of Satan and the demons as rulers on earth and reconciliation of God to man.

The sixth festival is the Feast of Tabernacles which pictures the 1,000-year reign of Jesus Christ with the resurrected saints on earth as kings and priests.

The seventh festival is called the Last Great Day and pictures the resurrection of all of humanity to physical life to receive its true one chance to qualify to receive salvation, which is to be resurrected as God’s immortal sons and daughters. This means that all those who died without knowing the true God will now be taught God’s way of life and can qualify to receive eternal life. Most of humanity will qualify and receive eternal life.

God’s plan of salvation as pictured by the seven annual holy days is explained in great detail in the United Church of God booklet titled “*God’s Holy Day Plan: Promise of Hope for all Mankind*”, available free of charge at the Church’s web site www.ucg.org.

After Jesus Christ and the saints have brought salvation to all of humanity on earth, then the entire universe is available to rule for all of humanity together now glorified as sons of God. In fact, God has already allotted the stars and planets to various nations to rule after they become sons of God. Moses prophesied this in Deuteronomy 4:19, “19 And lest you lift up your eyes unto heaven, and when you see the sun, and the moon, and the stars, even all the host of heaven, should be driven to worship them, and serve them, *which the Lord your God has divided unto all nations under the whole heaven*.”

When God’s plan of salvation for all of humanity is complete, humanity will get to see God the Father whom no human has ever seen, because He will live with mankind, who will then have become His literal immortal sons and daughters just as Jesus Christ is His Son now. Thus, God is reproducing Himself to have an everlasting relationship with His children. This is prophesied in Revelation 7:17, “15 Therefore are they before the throne of God, and serve him day and night in his temple: and he that sits on the throne shall dwell among them.”

Revelation 21:1-5, “1 And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea. 2 And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband. 3 And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God. 4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away. 5 And he that sat upon the throne said, Behold, I make all things new. And he said unto me, Write: for these words are true and faithful.”

As we have seen from the pages of the Bible, God has a dynamic plan for humanity. Humans will be able to see and meet the supreme God personally, look at Him as long as they want. He also has a dynamic future planned for them which includes ruling the universe with Him. That means no scarcity of anything. They will be given spirit bodies that will not be subject to the limitations of time and space. And they will have gained victory over death. And there are other exciting things God has planned for us which we don’t yet know (1 Corinthians 2:9, “9 But as it is written, Eye has not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God has prepared for them that love him”).

The way to attain salvation is explained in the United Church of God booklet titled “*The Road to Eternal Life*” available free of charge and without any obligation at the Church’s web site www.ucg.org.

**Will God Offer Different Kind of Salvation Based on One’s Religion**

Many claim that all religions are true religions, just different paths to the same goal: salvation. But this is a foolish notion. The reason is obvious. Salvation offered by every religion is different. If the one true God has created every human being on earth, why would He promise different kind of salvation to different peoples?

Some can argue that all religions are true religions and that their adherents will receive the salvation offered by that religion. But that is a ludicrous idea. It is unreasonable to believe that the true God will offer different salvation to different human beings when all human beings look and function alike, think alike, have similar desires and aspirations. In my family I am the only Christian. My brothers and their families are all Sikhs, and all cousins on my mother’s side are Hindus. Do you believe when each of them receives salvation, it will be different for each member of the family? Such a belief is irrational. My brothers are of the same race, born to the same parents. Clearly the one true God is not going to offer different salvation to each of us.

Consider Catholicism, Protestantism, or Islam. Each of these faiths has adherents of all races, white, black, oriental and mixed races. And most of humanity belongs to mixed races anyway. All these faiths offer the same salvation to each adherent who qualifies for salvation. Clearly different salvation is not going to be offered to adherents of each of these religions based on race or nation. Hinduism and Sikhism also do not offer different salvation to their adherents based on race.

People can also change their religion and do, as I did. Would God offer such people salvation based on the previous religion or the new religion? Or can we pick and choose what salvation we want? Clearly this is all confusion. But if only one true Supreme God exists, He cannot be the author of this confusion, and if He is Almighty He would certainly have a plan to offer salvation to all of humanity with the potential for most to qualify to receive salvation. The only reasonable belief is that He is going to offer one kind of salvation, and one kind only, to all of humanity. That leads to the rational conclusion that only one religion can be the true religion, because all the others differ from it in the salvation they offer.

**CHAPTER 4**

**HOW TO PROVE WHICH PLAN OF SALVATION IS TRUE**

We have seen some bewildering ideas about salvation. Then there are differing ideas about God Himself and His nature. Islam believes in only one God. So does Sikhism. Krishna of Hinduism claims he is the supreme God, but the Ramayana of the Hindus does not acknowledge that. It claims that Rama is a god, and that there are many other levels of gods and demi-gods. The Germans also believe in many levels of divine beings.

Christianity claims that there is one Triune God (also known as the Trinity) who exists as three coequal personages: the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit.God’s Church on the other hand believes that there is one supreme God known as God the Father, the original source of all life, and that Jesus Christ is also God. But the Church of God does not believe that the Holy Spirit is a person but is the spirit essence or energy of God. Judaism also believes in one God though they use the same Old Testament as does Christianity to formulate their beliefs which shows the existence of at least two Beings called Lord.

Who is correct in their beliefs? How can we prove what is the truth? Is there any evidence available to decide which belief is the truth, and which idea of salvation is true?

Consider the various ideas of salvation of different religions. Catholics and Protestants believe that those Christians who qualify for salvation go to heaven. Those who don’t go to hell! Is there any proof for any of these beliefs? How do we know with absolute certainty whether a loved one who died is in heaven or burning in hell? Without proof, these are mere beliefs of men.

Is there any proof that the paradise promised to males in Islam exists? No one has ever provided any proof. Without proof it is a mere claim in the Koran. A man claims that the Koran was revealed to him. How do we know whether it is revelation from the true God or is the lies of another ‘god’?

Who has seen an immortal soul, or seen the immortal soul transmigrate into another creature on the death of a human being as claimed by Hinduism and Sikhism? Without proof it is mere conjecture, a mere belief without any evidence. It is faith without any basis. Without proof these are mere philosophies of men. Since the immortal soul is supposed to be invisible, and we cannot experience it with any of our physical senses, this belief is unprovable for human beings. We have to accept it on faith. It could very well be a lie, because we cannot prove it to be the truth.

We have seen that ideas of salvation offered to Jews in Judaism are inconsistent with all the Old Testament scriptures. Many passages have not been explained and Jews still debate them. Also, Judaism offers salvation only to the Jews. Why would God choose just one people as His favorite chosen people and treat the vast majority of others as less favored people? Many of these things remain unexplained in Judaism.

Can God’s Church prove that its belief about salvation offered to Christianity is true? Can it prove its views about what God is? It proves its views on the basis of the Bible. But why should anyone believe the Bible above any of holy books of other religions?

Since all these ideas on salvation differ from one another, only one can be true, if at all. All others have to be mere philosophies of men at best, or the deliberate diabolical lies of another god or gods competing against the true God. How do we prove what is the truth?

These days it has become fashionable for all religions to claim that their holy book is the direct revelation of God through the founder of their religion. However, these religions do not provide evidence that their scriptures have been backed by the authority of a Supreme Being who has total control over the affairs of men.

Any writer of a so-called holy book can lie or be deceived into lying by the spirit world; unless he can provide evidence that his religion’s holy book is backed by the power and authority of the only true God. We are not saying that the writers of the scriptures are lying deliberately. We do not doubt their sincerity. They may have very sincerely believed that what they wrote was revealed to them by a superior non-human power. They believed that words and thoughts were put into their minds by a higher power, or in the case of Mohammad, he heard a spirit being, claiming to be the archangel Gabriel, who spoke to him as a representative of the one great Allah. The presence of an angel can be absolutely overwhelming for a human being. A person can be easily misled to believe that communication from such beings is from God Himself. So, when the founders of the religions claim that the words that they wrote in their scriptures were revealed to them, they may have been absolutely sincere, but could be wrong.

However, if Muslims, Hindus, Sikhs, Jews, Christians, ancestor worshippers and those of other faiths cannot prove that their holy books are backed by the authority of Almighty God, then why should we believe him when he says he is the creator of the universe? Anybody can lie, including great spirits, and claim that he has created everything. Why should we believe such a liar if he cannot demonstrate that he is the Almighty God?

There is also no reason to believe that the salvation offered by these religions has any truth to it. Without proof ideas of salvation offered by different religions are likely to be mere figments of the imagination of the founders of the religions, or even worse, inspired by one or more lying spirits or gods. Without proof, we would be asked to accept these offers of salvation on blind faith.

**How do we Prove which Holy Book is Inspired by God**

The holy books of all the religions that we have now are complete. Nothing is being added to them. All the ideas of all the religions based on the existence of God are based on the understanding and interpretation of the holy books. Therefore, it is important for us to obtain our ideas about each religion from its holy book.

Since all our ideas about each religion must come from its holy book, the great question before us is: How do we prove which holy book is inspired by the supreme Creator God and is the true word of God?

The only real acceptable criterion must be a demonstration of the power of Almighty God in the pages of the holy book. This means that in the pages of the holy book God must have told us that He would do numerous great things (not just one, two or three events because they can come true by mere coincidence) well in advance and brought them to pass exactly as foretold. Instruction on how to live our lives cannot provide us the irrefutable proof we need. Such instructions differ in each of the holy books, with some commonalities. We are not always able to evaluate the long-term result of following the instructions because of the short span covered in them except the Bible, and certainly not on how they affect salvation. But if we can prove that the entire holy book of a religion is backed by the power of God, then we can obey all the instructions in that holy book with confidence as well as accept the promises of salvation it offers.

**Caution about Imperfect Human Beings**

Since we are trying to prove which holy book is inspired by the supreme God, we must be cautious about two great issues that can prejudice us while seeking the truth. The first issue is the conduct of the professing adherents to the religion.

It is generally true that you can know a religion by the fruits it produces, or the conduct of the average adherent to the religion. But the truth is that all claiming adherence to a particular religion are not devout believers and practitioners of the religion. Most of humanity claims to profess a religion, but have never even read their religion’s entire scriptures, leave alone understanding them. The average person’s understanding of his religion comes by hearsay, by whatever little he or she has learnt from the family or preachers. They are busy with the cares of this world and have little time to practice their religion devoutly. Thus, one will not find the true fruits of the religion by evaluating the conduct of the average adherent.

The non-Christian world evaluates Christianity from the conduct of the average Christian in America, the British Commonwealth nations, France and the Benelux and Scandinavian countries. But homosexuality, sexual immorality of every kind, drug abuse and other sins run rampant in these nations. The non-Christian world believes that is what the Bible teaches. Hence, they reject Christianity as a false religion. But that is a wrong premise for rejecting the religion.

In reality such practices are condemned in the Bible in the harshest possible terms and the death penalty prescribed for such sins. Just as an example, here is God’s condemnation of the sin of homosexuality in the Bible.

Actual command against homosexuality and the penalty for this violation of the law is described in Leviticus 20:13 (NIV): “13 " 'If a man lies with a man as one lies with a woman, both of them have done what is detestable. They must be put to death; their blood will be on their own heads.”

God warns America, British Commonwealth nations and the Jews through Isaiah the prophet in Isaiah 3:8-9 (NIV): “8 Jerusalem staggers, Judah is falling; their words and deeds are against the LORD, defying his glorious presence. 9 The look on their faces testifies against them; they parade their sin like Sodom; they do not hide it. Woe to them! They have brought disaster upon themselves.”

God is prophesying here that America, British Commonwealth nations and the Jewish state of Israel are going to bring ruin on themselves for the sin of homosexuality in addition to their other sins. God is actually going to punish them for violating the laws that true Christianity requires them to obey.

You can clearly see that the fault is not with the religion but with those who profess to follow it but are not devout adherents. Therefore, be careful not to reject the true religion by merely looking at the average adherent to the religion. The right way to judge the religion is by evaluating the conduct of its devout followers. But even that criterion is not perfect because even devout followers can sin and fall short. The Bible in fact says “all have sinned and fallen short of the glory of God” (Romans 3:23).

Second issue is the different interpretations of the scriptures. Each religion has many different sects and denominations because of different interpretations of the scriptures of the religion. Christianity alone by some counts has 30,000 – 40,000 different denominations, with about 2,000 being major ones. All have different interpretations of the Bible. They believe in and adhere to their own interpretation of the Bible.

Then all tenets of the religion are usually not derived from the scriptures. They have added many other things, such as thoughts and philosophies of the great past leaders of the religion to their religious practices from outside the Bible. Various preachers have added their own ideas, philosophies and traditions to what the scriptures say and gained a following for themselves, thus creating a new sect or denomination in the religion, or a new religion altogether. And the biggest denomination, Catholicism maintains that the Bible is not the sole authority to be relied on for obtaining salvation, but the teachings and traditions of their Church in addition to the Bible have greater weight. Obviously, such tenets not derived from the scriptures do not have God’s authority behind them, if we have proved the holy book of the religion to be inspired by God.

Let’s now begin evaluating various religions according to the criterion we have established to determine which is the one and only true religion, if one exists.

**CHAPTER 5**

**WHICH RELIGION IS BACKED BY GOD**

The criterion we have established to prove that the holy book of a religion is backed by the power of Almighty God is to find proof in the recorded pages of that book that God said He would do many great things in the past and brought them to pass precisely as prophesied without fail. This will also be a major proof that the holy book of that religion is the true word of God so that we can believe in its doctrines concerning salvation and how to live our lives to attain that salvation.

Let’s now look at how various religions stack up.

***Islam and the Koran***

Islam says that males who have done good deeds according to the criteria the Koran defines as good deeds go to paradise. All others will go to hell. But good deeds cannot guarantee you paradise. Allah can still choose if he wants to give you paradise or not, even though you may have done good deeds. So, going to paradise also depends on the mercy of Allah on the Muslim.

But we have no proof that such a paradise as promised by Allah exists. Nor do we have proof that the hell described as the fate of those who have not pleased Allah exists. These are mere promises for the future, not prophecies for the future.

The Koran contains no prophecies that came true in the past. Our criterion to evaluate the truth of the holy book of the religion is not one, two or three prophecies, but numerous prophecies that have already come true in the history of mankind. The Koran is totally silent on the subject.

There is a future prophecy in Islam of the coming of the 12th Imam Mahdi [meaning ‘the guided one’] to lead Muslims to victory over the Christian west. Then the antichrist will come and the Mahdi will fight the antichrist. Then Jesus Christ will return to earth to fight along with the Mahdi to defeat and kill the antichrist. Then the entire world will convert to Islam, and Jesus Christ, a Muslim Himself, will rule over the earth and then die.

This prophecy is not in the Koran but is contained in the Hadiths or sayings attributed to Mohammad by the companions of Mohammad. The authenticity of many of these sayings is doubtful. Still why should we believe this prophecy in Islam? The Hadiths or the Koran do not contain any prophecies about the past that came to pass exactly as foretold? Therefore, the coming of the 12th Imam is merely a statement about the future without incontrovertible proof that it has been given by Almighty God and backed by His power. There is no reason to believe in this prophecy. Hence the Koran and the Hadiths have miserably failed the test that they are backed by the power of the Almighty Creator God. The Allah of Islam is a liar, an imposter and counterfeiter. He fails to take up the challenge of the God of the Bible to foretell the future numerous times, which we then would be able to verify from history that it came to pass exactly as foretold in the Koran.

There is also no reason to believe in the promises of reward in paradise and punishment in hell in the Koran on blind faith. God of the Bible instead wants us to prove all things before actually believing in them. God says through the apostle Paul “Prove all things; hold fast that which is good” (I Thessalonians 5:21).

***Hinduism and the Gita, Ramayana and Mahabharata***

Now let’s look at Hinduism. Krishna of the Hindus claims to be the creator or sustainer of the universe. How are we to believe whether his claim is true, or he is simply another liar, imposter, a charlatan and counterfeiter trying to deceive humanity?

The Bhagavat Gita is a discourse between Krishna and Arjun just before a great battle. One can claim that its words have divine backing because Arjun and his side won that battle with the backing of Krishna who claimed to be the creator and sustainer of the universe. The Ramayana is similarly a story of the victory of Rama over Ravana. But such a story can be written by any winning side in a battle, providing its victory as proof of divine backing. One event coming true does not constitute irrefutable proof. For incontrovertible proof of backing of the Almighty God, there must be numerous predictions, stated in great detail and proof from history that they came to pass precisely as prophesied. The holy books of Hinduism are utterly lacking in such proof of the backing of Almighty God behind their words.

The three scriptures of the Hindus, the Gita, the Mahabharata and the Ramayana tell us that humans are born again and again as humans, or if they have done particularly evil deeds then as animals until they attain salvation.

These are mere statements we are required to believe on blind faith. There is no proof that any human being is born again and again as a human, or that the immortal soul of a dead human being is born into the body of an animal or another creature?

These statements about the future of mankind after death are simply unprovable.

The Hindu scriptures contain fantastic mythological tales of myriads of gods, fighting each other, showing off their powers by empowering human beings with special unbelievably fantastic powers to curse and vengefully use against other human beings to get even with them. Humans are also able to curse gods and the curses come true.

The gods cower in fear and obey when cursed by them. How ridiculous. You can read about such curses in the Ramayana and the Mahabharata. Then there are tales of birds and monkey armies protecting human beings. How much more foolish and unreal can it get than that? But the Hindus confer the status of ‘holy’ on the fantastic tales told in the Mahabharata and Ramayana of the exact same nature as the Greek, Roman and Egyptian myths, only more fantastic than them.

One can still see Hindu fakirs wasting their lives on the banks of the Ganges river around the city of Benares in torturous meditation, austerities such as sitting in front of fires in the summer, with the hope of gaining yogic powers and boons from one of the gods so that they can curse whoever offends them. They survive by begging. Outside of the fantastic tales in the Hindu scriptures, there is not even one single story in provable genuine history of any human ever having gained such yogic powers. If the Almighty God was backing up the Hindu scriptures, we should be able to see many of these almost naked begging fakirs with yogic powers today. Don’t waste your time trying to find such proof. If there was such proof, most of India would have flocked to that fakir in veneration.

Thus, the holy books of Hinduism have failed to prove by our criterion that they are backed by the power of Almighty God.

***Sikhism and the Guru Granth***

The holy book of the Sikhs, the Guru Granth also contains no prophecies of many great events that came to pass precisely as foretold to provide us incontrovertible proof that its words are backed by Almighty God. Therefore, its words are mere philosophies of men, and not inspired by the true Creator God. We are asked to simply believe on blind faith that the salvation promised in it is the truth. The Guru Granth of the Sikhs thus has also failed our test that its words are backed by the power of the Almighty Creator God.

***Span of History Covered in the Holy Books***

You will also notice that the span of human history covered by the holy books of various religions is very short. Human history covered by Islam can only be about 120 years, from the life of Mohammad and his companions who could have lived a maximum of about 60 years after he died. The history covered by the Gita and Mahabharata of the Hindus is just a few days of the battle. The Ramayana plays around with thousands of years, just as evolutionists can play around with time by mentioning that evolutionary events took place over millions and billions of years. We are asked to believe such foolish nonsense on blind faith, without a shred of evidence of prophecies that came true to support it. Sikhism covers a period of about 240 years beginning with the life of the first Guru Nanak and ending with the 10th Guru Gobind Singh. In contrast the Bible covers the history of mankind from the creation of man to about 4,000 years. But it also contains very detailed prophecies of great empires and what is going to happen during the following 2,000 years right down to our time and beyond.

What this means is that the holy books of all other religions except the Bible do not contain enough history which we can use to test whether the words of those holy books have been backed by the power of Almighty God. On the other hand, the Bible contains detailed history and prophecies which we can compare with secular history to see if its words came true to apply our test of the inspiration of its words by Almighty God.

We have thus seen that the three religions of the world: Islam, Hinduism and Sikhism have failed our test that their holy books are backed by the power of Almighty God.

Before proving whether the Bible is the word of God which has not been corrupted, we should first understand what the opinion of Jesus Christ, the prophets, the apostles and even God’s loyal angels was about the Bible.

***Opinion of Jesus, Prophets and Apostles about the Bible***

Can we be absolutely certain that God preserved His Word for us today? Jesus answers in Matthew 24:35: “Heaven and earth shall pass away, but My words shall not pass away.” Jesus also said in John 17:17: “…your word is truth.” So, Jesus emphatically said that God’s word, the Old Testament in the Bible (which is what was available as scripture when Jesus Christ was alive) is the truth.

Jesus also said in Matthew 5:17-18: “Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill. For verily [or assuredly] I say unto you, till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle [the equivalent of a fullstop or a coma as punctuation marks] shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.” “The law or the prophets” was a term applied for the Old Testament. Here Jesus was saying that everything written in the Old Testament, including punctuation marks, will be fulfilled. Therefore, it is the truth backed by Almighty God.

When Jesus was arrested before His crucifixion, He said in Matthew 26:54, 56: “But how then shall the scriptures be fulfilled, that thus it must be?…But all this was done, that the scriptures of the prophets might be fulfilled. Then all the disciples forsook Him, and fled.” This shows that Jesus knew that the Jews possessed the correct Scriptures in the Temple and all synagogues, which were exact copies of the ones in the Temple.

This was confirmed in Luke 24:44-45, “And He said unto them, These are the words which I spoke unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning Me. Then opened He their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures”

The law of Moses, the prophets and the psalms referred to the canonized Old Testament Hebrew Scriptures. Jesus confirmed that they were the inspired word of God, containing many prophecies concerning Him, which were fulfilled.

The disciples were slow to understand the events concerning Jesus’ crucifixion and Resurrection. He said to them in Luke 24:25-27: “O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken: ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into His glory? And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, He expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning Himself” (Luke 24:25-27).

Jesus also said in John 10:35: “If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken.”

Here Jesus was saying that the scriptures cannot be broken, meaning that the scriptures are infallible. By the time of Jesus, the Old Testament scriptures had been written and preserved for a time period varying from more than 1450 years when Moses delivered his first 5 books of the Bible to about 450 years since Malachi the prophet wrote his book. Jesus thus confirmed that the Old Testament had been faithfully preserved by the Jews till His time.

Here is what the prophet Daniel thought of the scriptures: “But I will show you that which is noted in the scripture of truth…” (Daniel 10:21). This was probably the archangel Gabriel talking to Daniel, and Daniel recorded what was revealed to him, because he knew it was the truth.

Thus, even the archangels of God call the scriptures truth. Certainly, Muslims cannot accuse the archangel Gabriel of lying. The archangel confirmed that the Old Testament scriptures written up to that time were the truth

The angels of God also keep the sayings of the Bible. The angel that was revealing parts of chapters 21 and 22 of the book of Revelation to the Apostle John said in Revelation 22:6-9: “6 And he said unto me, These sayings are faithful and true: and the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to show unto his servants the things which must shortly be done. 7 Behold, I come quickly: blessed is he that keeps the sayings of the prophecy of this book. 8 And I John saw these things, and heard them. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which showed me these things. 9 Then says he unto me, See you do it not: for I am your fellow servant, and of your brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God.”

When the prophecies in the Book of Revelation were revealed to John, all other books of the Bible had already been written and the final compilation already done by John the Apostle. So when the angel said that he was a fellow servant like the prophets and kept the sayings of this book, he also signified that the canonization of books that John had done were also scripture. So the angel signified that the New Testament of the Bible had been completed, and he as an angel of God kept the sayings of the entire Bible as they were faithful and true. As the angel had signified to Daniel the prophet that the Old Testament scriptures were the truth, the angel was now signifying to John the apostle that the New Testament that he had finally canonized with the book of Revelation was the truth and even he as an angel of God lived by its words. Besides Jesus Christ, what greater testimony can we have than that of God’s angels that the entire Bible is the true word of God?

The apostle Paul told Timothy in 2 Timothy 3:16-17: “All scripture [meaning the Old Testament and the New Testament, as we will see how the Bible was canonized] is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: that the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.” The literal translation in place of ‘inspiration of God’ is “God-breathed.” So according to Paul, the entire Bible is God breathed, or inspired by God.

In Romans 1:2 Paul calls the scriptures ‘holy.’

Peter the apostle shows in 2 Peter 1:20-21 that God had an active hand in the writing of the Bible. He said that “No prophecy [which means ‘inspired speaking or writing’] of Scripture ever came by the will of man. Instead, holy men of God spoke as they were moved by the Holy Spirit.”

Thus, from the words of Jesus, the prophets, the apostles and even God’s angels, the scriptures, the entire Holy Bible is the true, inspired and infallible word of God.

Next, we will examine the holy book of Judaism, the Old Testament of the Bible, and the holy book of Christianity, the entire Bible according to the criteria we have established to determine whether its words have the backing of the Almighty God or not.

**CHAPTER 6**

**PROPHECIES IN THE BIBLE TILL NOAH’S FLOOD**

The fact that in the ‘last days’ meaning in our times, the authenticity of the Bible as the true word of God would be questioned was prophesied in the New Testament by Peter the Apostle in 2 Peter 3:2-3, “2 That you may be mindful of the words which were spoken before by the holy prophets, and of the commandment of us the apostles of the Lord and Savior: 3 Knowing this first, that *there shall come in the last days scoffers, walking after their own lusts*, 4 And saying, Where is the promise of his coming? for since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue as they were from the beginning of the creation..”

In our times more than any other time, scoffers question Bible prophecies concerning the return of Jesus Christ, and by implication the authenticity of the Bible as the word of God.

We have tested Islam, Hinduism and Sikhism so far to see whether their holy books are inspired and backed by the power of Almighty God. They have all miserably failed our test. The Bible on the other hand contains numerous prophecies of the past and for the future. Let’s now examine these prophecies to test whether they came true in the past to prove that the Bible has been backed by the power of Almighty God.

In this chapter we will examine prophecies till Noah’s Flood.

***Curse on the Earth***

The very first prophecy God pronounced was a curse on the ground which is still being fulfilled today.

After Adam and Eve had disobeyed God in the Garden of Eden and eaten of the fruit of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, God pronounced a sentence on them in Genesis 3:17-19 (NKJV): “17 Then to Adam He said, "Because you have heeded the voice of your wife, and have eaten from the tree of which I commanded you, saying, 'You shall not eat of it': "Cursed is the ground for your sake; In toil you shall eat of it all the days of your life. 18 Both thorns and thistles it shall bring forth for you, and you shall eat the herb of the field. 19 In the sweat of your face you shall eat bread till you return to the ground, for out of it you were taken; for dust you are, and to dust you shall return.”

In the Garden, Adam and Eve had their food provided for them. They just had to tend the Garden. But after they disobeyed God’s instructions, they were expelled from the Garden and had to produce their own food by toil and hard work. It has not been easy for humanity to feed itself since then. Many have starved to death in the history of mankind, and many don’t eat to the full every day even today, despite our so-called matchless advances in technology. We are always trying to play catch-up in feeding all of humanity. It will continue to be our condition until our Creator Jesus Christ returns to earth, rules over all of humanity and lifts this curse.

Humanity has suffered from the ravages of this punishment throughout its history. And usually God does not have to intervene to make lives difficult for us. With Adam and Eve humanity chose to go its own way rather than obtain all its instructions from God. It is our own ways, and our wrong agricultural practices that bring this curse on us. But God prophesied this, and it has continued to be fulfilled throughout man’s history.

***Prophecy about Cain***

One of the earliest prophecies about the future of a man in the Bible was about Cain, the first son of Adam and Eve who murdered his righteous brother Abel. After the murder God pronounced a curse on Cain, meaning predicted his future course of life, which is stated in Genesis 4:8-12(NKJV):

“8 Now Cain talked with Abel his brother; and it came to pass, when they were in the field, that Cain rose up against Abel his brother and killed him. 9 Then the Lord said to Cain, "Where is Abel your brother?" He said, "I do not know. Am I my brother's keeper?" 10 And He said, "What have you done? The voice of your brother's blood cries out to Me from the ground. 11 So now you are cursed from the earth, which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood from your hand. 12 When you till the ground, it shall no longer yield its strength to you. A fugitive and a vagabond you shall be on the earth.”

Here is the evidence that this prophecy about Cain’s future came true as prophesied.

After God pronounced the curse on Cain, he complained about the severity of his punishment. Verses 13-15 state: “13 And Cain said to the Lord, "My punishment is greater than I can bear! 14 Surely You have driven me out this day from the face of the ground; I shall be hidden from Your face; I shall be a fugitive and a vagabond on the earth, and it will happen that anyone who finds me will kill me." 15 And the Lord said to him, "Therefore, whoever kills Cain, vengeance shall be taken on him sevenfold." And the Lord set a mark on Cain, lest anyone finding him should kill him.”

The mark God set on Cain has been misunderstood, but Deuteronomy 32:8 (NKJV) explains what happened: “8 When the Most High divided their inheritance to the nations, when He separated the sons of Adam [that is Cain from the other sons of Adam], He set the boundaries of the peoples according to the number of the children of Israel.”

The mark on Cain was simply a land boundary marker God set between Cain and the other descendants of Adam so that they would live separately and develop their own civilizations. Then verse Genesis 4:16 states: “16 Then Cain went out from the presence of the Lord and dwelt in the land of Nod on the east of Eden.”

After separating from the other future descendants of Adam, Cain went away and traveled to the East. The details of what Cain and his descendants did are provided by the Jewish historian Josephus. He states in Antiquities 1.1.2 that Cain “wandered over many countries.” Thus, Cain became a vagabond as prophesied. The reason he became a vagabond was the curse pronounced on his agricultural pursuits. God had said to him: “12 When you till the ground, it shall no longer yield its strength to you.”

The reason Cain’s agricultural pursuits were cursed is provided by Josephus. He states in Antiquities 1.2.1: “But Cain was not only very wicked in other respects, but was wholly intent upon getting; and he first contrived to plough the ground.” Josephus further says that he was “a covetous man’ and “forced the ground.” In other words, Cain used farming methods that depleted the soil. He would use land for raising crops for a few years. Then when the soil got depleted, he would move on and raise crops on new soil. When that soil got depleted, he would be forced to move on to new land. That is why he became a vagabond on earth.

The problem with Cain was that he did not want to raise animals as he probably did not want to take the trouble of looking after them and cleaning up after them. The reason he became angry with his brother Abel was that Abel brought to God an offering of the best of his animals because he raised animals. Cain brought an offering of the grain and fruits and vegetables he raised. But God rejected Cain’s offering because God required an offering of animals and not of grain, fruits and vegetables. So Cain got angry with Abel because his offering was accepted, but his own was rejected. That is why he murdered his brother.

Then after Cain was punished for murdering his brother, he began to hate God. In his rebellion he would not raise farm animals which would have helped maintain the fertility of the soil he used for raising crops. Instead his agricultural practices depleted the soil and he was forced to till new land. Since Cain had to produce his own knowledge by trial and error, he did not know that his agricultural pursuits came to nothing because of lack of animal manure.

This story was repeated wherever he wandered on earth. He was forced to live by hunting and gathering. But he also had no weapons for hunting. And the clean animals like deer were too swift for him to hunt. So his descendants had to resort to hunting unclean slower animals like elephants, mammoths, bears and others to provide food for his growing family. His descendants also began to live in caves. Cain and his descendants thus began to live a degenerate lifestyle, becoming wanderers and vagabonds on earth. Archaeology has provided evidence of this.

Finally, when he was unable to make a comfortable living on the earth, he decided to move near the other descendants of his father Adam. Josephus again describes what happened in Antiquities 1.2.2: “And when Cain had traveled over many countries, he, with his wife, built a city, named Nod, which is a place so called, and there he settled his abode; where also he had children. However, he did not accept of his punishment in order to amendment, but to increase his wickedness; for he only aimed to procure everything that was for his own bodily pleasure, though it obliged him to be injurious to his neighbors. He augmented his household substance with much wealth, by rapine and violence; he excited his acquaintance to procure pleasures and spoils by robbery, and became a great leader of men into wicked courses. He also introduced a change in that way of simplicity wherein men lived before; and was the author of measures and weights. And whereas they lived innocently and generously while they knew nothing of such arts, he changed the world into cunning craftiness. He first of all set boundaries about lands: he built a city, and fortified it with walls, and he compelled his family to come together to it; and called that city Enoch, after the name of his eldest son Enoch.”

Josephus shows that Cain after wandering the earth for more than a century came back and settled near the other descendants of Adam. He built a city fortified with walls and began to make a living by robbery, plunder and violence. He began to steal from the other descendants of Adam, forced them to pay tribute or he threatened them with violence. He fortified his city with high walls for protection. Because of his robberies, crimes and violence, he and his descendants began to be hunted. That’s how he became a fugitive. Thus, each and every prophecy pronounced on him came true, providing us proof that it had to be God Almighty who could pronounce such a curse on Cain and bring it to pass on him and his descendants, precisely as prophesied.

**The Flood**

But Cain’s story does not end there. People before the Flood had very large families. Many children were born to Cain, and the non-white races originated in Cain’s line of descendants. Cain’s descendants continued in his way of robbery, violence, plunder and imposing tribute on others by force. One of his descendants named Lamech became a very powerful man in the world and ruled by imposing tribute on others. It was inevitable that Lamech and Cain would eventually clash as both would try to extend their rule and extract tribute from the same peoples. This clash eventually led to war between them in which Lamech killed his ancestor Cain. This is also indicated in Lamech’s statement to his two wives in Genesis 4:23 (NKJV): “23 Then Lamech said to his wives: "Adah and Zillah, hear my voice; Wives of Lamech, listen to my speech! For I have killed a man for wounding me, even a young man for hurting me.” According to Jewish tradition, the great man Lamech killed for wounding him was his ancestor Cain.

After Cain’s violent death, his descendants continued in his way. Genesis 4:17-24 provides Cain’s genealogy to the 7th generation which lived in the period just before Noah’s Flood, the last of which died in the Flood.

After Enoch the son of Cain, the names of the next 3 descendants of Cain are listed simply because they were part of the genealogy of Lamech. They did nothing significant to which God wanted to draw our attention. But when the Bible comes to Lamech, seven verses are devoted to seven key individuals in his family: Lamech himself, his two wives Adah who was racially white, and Zillah [name means dark] who was African black, his sons Jabal, Jubal, Tubalcain and his daughter Naamah. These were seven world famous individuals in the generation just before the Flood. They forced the people to worship them as gods.

Paganized version of their story has come to us in the myths of various nations such as the Greek, Roman, Egyptian and Indian myths. These individuals deified themselves as gods and demanded to be worshipped by the people. Lamech was worshipped as Zeus, Adah as Hara, Zillah as Demeter, Jabal as Hercules, Jubal as Apollo, Tubalcain as Vulcan and Naamah as the goddess Athena.

They lived the way of Cain, forcing others to pay tribute to them or face violence. Also notice that Lamech had two wives that the Bible recognizes: Adah and Zillah. He apparently was the first bigamist in the history of mankind. But the myths tell us that he had many wives, mistresses and took other women as he chose. He and his descendants specially took white women of the line of Seth, the son of Adam, as they chose.

The Bible describes this condition in Genesis 6:1-2 (NKJV): “1 And it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born unto them, 2 That the sons of God [the Hebrew word used here is Elohim, the correct translation of which is gods] saw the daughters of men that they were fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose.”

The sons of gods referred to here are Lamech and his descendants who had deified themselves as gods. They took as many of the fair women of the line of Seth as they chose. These were interracial relationships. The result of these interracial marriages and relationships was violence in the extreme. The whole earth became saturated with violence. This condition is described further in Genesis 6 and what God decided to do about it.

“5 Then the Lord saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every intent of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. 6 And the Lord was sorry that He had made man on the earth, and He was grieved in His heart. 7 So the Lord said, "I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the earth, both man and beast, creeping thing and birds of the air, for I am sorry that I have made them." 11 The earth also was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence.12 So God looked upon the earth, and indeed it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted their way on the earth.”

The Bible says that because of the evil ways of Cain’s descendants, all of humanity had become corrupt and every intent of the thoughts of each and every human being was only evil continually. As a result, the earth had become saturated with violence. All had become corrupt except Noah and a small part of his family. Verses 8-10 state: “8 But Noah found grace in the eyes of the Lord. 9 This is the genealogy of Noah. Noah was a just man, perfect in his generations. Noah walked with God. 10 And Noah begot three sons: Shem, Ham, and Japheth.”

Because Noah walked with God, God decided to destroy all of humanity in a Flood and save only Noah alive with his 3 sons and their 4 wives. So, God instructed Noah to build an ark to save his family and animals of each kind. These instructions continue in Genesis 6:13-22:

“13 And God said to Noah, "The end of all flesh has come before Me, for the earth is filled with violence through them; and behold, I will destroy them with the earth. 14 "Make yourself an ark of gopherwood; make rooms in the ark, and cover it inside and outside with pitch. 15 And this is how you shall make it: The length of the ark shall be three hundred cubits, its width fifty cubits, and its height thirty cubits. 16 You shall make a window for the ark, and you shall finish it to a cubit from above; and set the door of the ark in its side. You shall make it with lower, second, and third decks.

“17 And behold, I Myself am bringing floodwaters on the earth, to destroy from under heaven all flesh in which is the breath of life; everything that is on the earth shall die. 18 But I will establish My covenant with you; and you shall go into the ark--you, your sons, your wife, and your sons' wives with you. 19 And of every living thing of all flesh you shall bring two of every sort into the ark, to keep them alive with you; they shall be male and female. 20 Of the birds after their kind, of animals after their kind, and of every creeping thing of the earth after its kind, two of every kind will come to you to keep them alive. 21 And you shall take for yourself of all food that is eaten, and you shall gather it to yourself; and it shall be food for you and for them." 22 Thus Noah did; according to all that God commanded him, so he did.”

God told Noah what he was about to do and gave him instructions on how to save his family, then carried out what He said He would do. These details are provided in Genesis 7:

“7 So Noah, with his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives, went into the ark because of the waters of the flood. 8 Of clean animals, of animals that are unclean, of birds, and of everything that creeps on the earth, 9 two by two they went into the ark to Noah, male and female, as God had commanded Noah.10 And it came to pass after seven days that the waters of the flood were on the earth. 11 In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, the seventeenth day of the month, on that day all the fountains of the great deep were broken up, and the windows of heaven were opened. 12 And the rain was on the earth forty days and forty nights…

“17 Now the flood was on the earth forty days. The waters increased and lifted up the ark, and it rose high above the earth. 18 The waters prevailed and greatly increased on the earth, and the ark moved about on the surface of the waters. 19 And the waters prevailed exceedingly on the earth, and all the high hills under the whole heaven were covered. 20 The waters prevailed fifteen cubits [or above 22 ½ feet] upward, and the mountains were covered. 21 And all flesh died that moved on the earth: birds and cattle and beasts and every creeping thing that creeps on the earth, and every man… 23 Only Noah and those who were with him in the ark remained alive. 24 And the waters prevailed on the earth one hundred and fifty days.”

God of the Bible prophesied about the global Flood in Noah’s day and brought it to pass. Only an Almighty God could gather such quantity of water to cover the highest mountain tops to a depth of 22 ½ feet. That provides convincing evidence that the God of the Bible is indeed the Almighty God.

PROOF OF NOAH’S FLOOD

God rejecting historians, archaeologists, evolutionists and others label the Biblical account of the Flood a myth. Yet if such an unprecedented event did occur, we should find stories or traditions of such an unforgettable catastrophe. Here than are the proofs of Noah’s Flood.

*Proof #1 - Universal Flood Traditions*

When we examine the historical testimony, we find that all peoples, including primitive people, relate the occurrence of a Flood. Here are some examples from the Summary of Flood traditions in many countries in the *International Standard Bible Encyclopedia* (ISBE) which provide unanimous testimony to the Bible story.

The Babylonians and Assyrians have preserved accounts of the Flood on clay tablets that match the Biblical account most closely and are exact in many details. These, therefore, are the most important of the traditions. The first account has come down to us only through the 4th century Greek historian Berosus. An earlier and far more important tradition was found inscribed on clay tablets in Babylon, which were discovered by George Smith in 1870 and filled as many as 180 lines. This account is known as the Epic of Gilgamesh. Both traditions give vivid accounts of the building of the ark, the dimensions of the ark, coming of the Flood, preservation of Noah and his family and the ark finally coming to rest in Armenia.

All Flood stories, however, have pagan embellishments to one degree or another and differ from the Bible account. An Egyptian legend of the great Flood is mentioned in Plato's Timaeus, from which only a few shepherds escaped.

The Greek tradition pictures their “Noah” building an ark to escape the waters. Later he is described as sending out a dove twice to check that the waters had abated, before setting foot on land again.

The traditional founder of Chinese civilization is represented as having escaped from a Flood because man had rebelled against heaven and despised the supreme power of the universe. Those preserved with him were his wife, three sons and three daughters.

ISBE states about traditions of the American Indians: “Among the American Indians traditions of the Deluge were found by travelers to be widely disseminated. Mr. Catlin says, "Among the 120 different tribes which I visited in North, South, and Central America, not a tribe exists that has not related to me distinct or vague traditions of such a calamity, in which one, or three, or eight persons were saved above the waters upon the top of a high mountain" (quoted by Wm. Restelle in Biblical Sac. (January, 1907), 157).”

The Peruvian version of the legend is that one man and one woman were saved in a box which floated on the flood waters for hundreds of miles. The Mexican account states that one man, his wife and children were saved in a ‘ship which sailed safely over the tumultuous waters which overwhelmed the earth.’ The Polynesians from the South Pacific maintain that a Flood overwhelmed all but eight people.

“The Indian [Flood] tradition,” according to William Smith’s Dictionary of the Bible: Comprising its Antiquities, “appears in various forms. Of these, the one which most remarkably agrees with the Biblical account is that contained in the Mahabharata. We are there told that Brahma, having taken the form of a fish, appeared to the pious Manu (Satya, i.e. the righteous, as Noah is also called) on the banks of the river Wirini… Brahma now announces to Manu the approach of the Deluge, and bids him build a ship, and put in it all kinds of seeds together with the seven Rishis, or holy beings. The Flood begins and covers the whole earth. Brahma himself appears in the form of a horned fish, and the vessel being made fast to him he draws it for many years and finally lands on the loftiest summit of Mount Himarat (i.e. the Himalaya). Then by the command of God, the ship is made fast…By the favor of Brahma, Manu, after the Flood creates the new race of mankind, which is hence termed Manudsha [Manusha] i.e. born of Manu. The Puranic or popular version is of much later date, and is, according to its own admission, ‘colored and disguised by allegorical imagery.’”

Since after the Flood all nations were one family (that of Noah) before they separated, we should expect all of them to have ancient traditions of such a spectacular event as the Flood. And that is exactly what we find.

Think about it. If the Flood had not occurred, would all human families have preserved an account of that event? It is too preposterous to believe that people even in remote tribes, many living in primitive conditions, would have retained knowledge of the event if it had not occurred. All people certainly would not have been deceived into believing the story if it were not true. No people can dream up such an event.

*Proof #2 - Mention of the Ark*

Despite denials from God rejecting historians, archaeologists and scholars that the Flood ever occurred, the ark has held great fascination for mankind.

Ancient writers have indicated that people in ancient times knew of the ark’s location. Ancient Jewish historian Josephus recorded that a great number of ancient historians commented on the subject. He writes in Antiquities of the Jews I, III, 6: “Now all the writers of barbarian histories make mention of this flood, and of this ark; among whom is Berosus the Chaldean. For when he is describing the circumstances of the flood, he goes on thus: "It is said there is still some part of this ship in Armenia, at the mountain of the Cordyaeans; and that some people carry off pieces of the bitumen, which they take away, and use chiefly as amulets for the averting of mischiefs." Hieronymus the Egyptian also, who wrote the Phoenician Antiquities, and Mnaseas, and a great many more, make mention of the same. Nay, Nicolaus of Damascus, in his ninety-sixth book, hath a particular relation about them; where he speaks thus: "There is a great mountain in Armenia, over Minyas, called Baris, upon which it is reported that many who fled at the time of the Deluge were saved; and that one who was carried in an ark came on shore upon the top of it; and that the remains of the timber were a great while preserved.”

Then much later in Antiquities, Josephus writes about events within his own lifetime. In book 20, chapter 2.2, he tells of a king who, when he was about to die, bestowed on his son a country in Armenia, of which he further states: “There are also in it the remains of the ark, wherein it is related that Noah escaped the Deluge, and where they are still shown to such as are desirous to see them.” Here is a plain statement that the ark still existed in first century A.D.

Reports of the ark have persisted through the years. An expert on the Flood, the historian, Dr. Aaron Smith of Greensboro, has patiently collected all the flood stories he could find. His collection comprises 80,000 works in 72 languages about the Deluge. About 70,000 of these mention the wreckage of Noah’s ark. If the Flood did not occur, why would so many nations’ ancient traditions mention the ark?

*Proof #3: The Geologic Evidence for the Flood*

Look at the Bible description of the Flood in Genesis 7:11: “In the six hundredth year of Noah’s life, in the second month, the seventeenth day of the month, the same day were all the fountains of the deep broken up, and the windows of heaven were opened. And the rain was upon the earth forty days and forty nights.”

The *Bible Knowledge Commentary* explains the meaning of the terminology “the fountains of the great deep were broken up": "…There were corresponding gigantic upheavals and shifting of the earth's crust which caused the oceans' floors to rise and break up their reservoirs of subterranean waters."

This comment indicates that due to volcanic eruptions, gigantic quantities of underground water were released, and some new geologic strata were formed on the earth. The geologic evidence of enormous volcanic activity during the Flood is provided by huge areas in many parts of the earth being covered by immense lava flows. The Columbia Plateau in the northwestern United States is a tremendous lava outpouring, covering an area of about 200,000 square miles to a depth of several thousand feet. Other parts of the United States that were covered by lava outflows include Idaho, Oregon, and California.

In fact, much of the world is covered in plateaus of hardened magma. Two million square miles of Canada is covered by lava flows, which is known as the Canadian Shield. Around the world some of the most famous outpourings include Iceland, India, Siberia, parts of South America, the rift valley in Africa, and the Sierra Nevada. In India the Deccan Plateau is an example. It is estimated to be more than 10,000 feet thick.

These plateaus indicate that the entire earth was undergoing vast volcanic activity and geologic changes to its surface.

Most of the islands of the world were formed as a result of Noah’s Flood. Many of the islands such as the Hawaiian Islands, Easter Island, Tonga Island and the famous Galapagos Islands are ocean peaks that are remnants of volcanoes. The island nations of New Zealand and Japan are formed by volcanic mountain chains.

Sedimentary rocks (which are formed by settling down of mineral matter, mud and silt in water) and sea shells are found on the tops of most of the world’s mountains, including Mount Everest (Odell N.E.; *The Highest Fossils in the World; Geology Magazine’* 104:173-74, 1967; and Thompson I. *National Audubon Society Field Guide to North American Fossils*. Alfred A. Knopf, NY., 1997.) Many people hiking into the mountains have reported finding fossilized seashells, fish and other aquatic creatures. This proves that these strata in the world’s highest mountains were under water at one time in the past, just as the Bible says. One would not expect to find fossils of seashells, fish and sea-life on the highest mountains unless they were under water at one time.

Thus, geologic evidence indicates that the earth went through a catastrophic event involving water and a tremendous amount of volcanic activity. The evidence agrees with the description of Noah’s Flood in the Bible.

*Proof #4: Fossil Evidence for Noah’s Flood*

Finding remains of massive numbers of mammals and other creatures together in many areas worldwide would provide proof that they were buried suddenly in a global catastrophe. Here are some examples of fossil graveyards:

The *International Standard Bible Encyclopedia* provides such evidence of the Noachian Flood: "Among these evidences one of the most convincing is to be found in the cave of San Ciro at the base of the mountains surrounding the plain of Palermo in Sicily. In this cave there was found an immense mass of the bones of hippopotami of all ages down to the fetus, mingled with a few of the deer, ox and elephant.

"Evidently the animals furnishing these bones had taken refuge in this cave to escape the rising water which had driven them in from the surrounding plains and cooped them up in the amphitheater of mountains during a gradual depression of the land.

"Similar collections of bones are found in various ossiferous fissures, in England and Western Europe, notably in the Rock of Gibraltar and at Santenay, a few miles South of Chalons in central France, where there is an accumulation of bones in fissures 1,000 ft. above the sea, similar in many respects to that in the cave described at San Ciro, though the bones of hippopotami did not appear in these places; but the bones of wolves, bears, horses and oxen, none of which had been gnawed by carnivora, were indiscriminately commingled as though swept in by all-pervading currents of water" (1915*, "Deluge of Noah*"). Since the carnivores had not made attempts to eat the herbivores, this shows that a great catastrophe had brought all these diverse animals together.

Another example is an outcropping at Agate Springs in northwestern Nebraska: "What remains of the hill covers about ten acres. This bone bed was accidentally discovered in 1876. It contains the bones of rhinoceroses, camels, giant wild boars, and other animals, buried together in a confused mass as only water would deposit them.

"It is estimated that the bones of about nine thousand complete animals are buried on this one hill…Hence, it is likely that many times that number of animals were brought together at this hill and buried there by the action of water…This is a fact that is most important. Animals of every kind died in great numbers and were buried almost instantly" (Alfred Rehwinkel, *The Flood*, 1951, p. 183). The fact to be emphasized is that this massive deposit of many kinds of animals was obviously made by a huge amount of water.

One of the greatest fossil graveyards is Alaska. Professor Frank C. Hibben writes: "In many places the Alaskan muck blanket is packed with animal bones and debris in trainload lots."

"Within this mass, frozen solid, lie the twisted parts of animals and trees intermingled with lenses of ice and layers of peat and mosses. It looks as though in the middle of some cataclysmic catastrophe…the whole Alaskan world of living animals and plants was suddenly frozen in mid-motion in a grim charade" (Frank C. Hibben, *The Lost Americans*, New York; Apollo Editions, 1961. pp. 90, 91).

The animals include millions of wooly mammoths, mastodons, bison, horses, wolves, bears and lions, all hopelessly entangled! Another author counted 1,766 jaws and 4,838 meta-podials from ONE species of bison in a small area near Fairbanks, Alaska, alone.

Hibben continues: “Seemingly, no animal was spared. "The young lie with the old, foal with dam and calf with cow. Whole herds of animals were apparently killed together, overcome by some common power" (ibid, p. 170).

He further states: "Throughout the Alaskan mucks, there is evidence of atmospheric disturbances of unparalleled violence. Mammoth and bison alike were torn and twisted as though by a cosmic hand in godly rage" (Frank C. Hibben, *The Lost Americans*, New York: Apollo Editions, 1961, p.177).

The Alaskan massacre of mammals is just one case in point. Much of North America’s wild animals would have made modern Africa’s big game preserves look like a children’s petting zoo in comparison. The largest known members of the elephant family, the Imperial mammoths thundered across vast areas of western North America; the mastodon made northeast New England its home, and further north, the wooly mammoth roamed the wide countryside. Besides the giants of the elephant family, the woolly rhinoceros, giant ground sloths, giant armadillos, bear-sized beavers, saber-toothed tigers, camels, antelopes, giant jaguars ALL made North America home. Then, suddenly, all these creatures perished. The fossil record provides abundant evidence of this mammal destruction.

But mammal massacre is not only a North American phenomenon. To differing degrees, all continents on earth bear testimony to this sudden catastrophic destruction. Across the vast stretches of Siberia, the same type of mammalicide is evident as in Alaska. Africa’s immense population of wild animals is a mere shadow of its former self. Fossils in South America bear similar testimony to extinction of strange large animals. Europe and Asia were struck by a similar catastrophe destroying vast herds of mammals.

World-known British zoologist Ivan T Sanderson discussed the Siberian remains in a popular magazine article some years ago: "The greatest riddle…is when, why and how did all these assorted creatures, and in such absolutely countless numbers, get killed, mashed up and frozen into this horrific indecency?" (Ivan T. Sanderson, "*Riddle of the Frozen Giants*," Saturday Evening Post, January 16, 1960, p. 82.)

The worldwide destruction of mammal life is clearly evident in the Shivalik Hills in the foothills of the gigantic Himalayas. In the nineteenth century, remains of living and extinct animals were found in great abundance.

Geologist D. N. Wadia describes the finds in D. N. Wadia, *Geology of India*, 2nd edition, London: Macmillan and Co., Ltd., 1939, p. 268: "The sudden and widespread reduction, by extinction, of the Siwalik mammals is a most startling event for the geologist as well as the biologist.

"The great carnivores, the varied races of elephants belonging to no less than 25 to 30 species...the numerous tribes of large and highly specialized ungulates [hoofed animals] are to be seen no more in an immediately succeeding age" (ibid., p. 279).

European evidence of the worldwide massacre is provided by a great fossil graveyard is Geiseltal, Germany, where more than 6,000 types of fossil vertebrae, including insects, mollusks, and plants are found. Millions of creatures are buried.

The earth today has only a small number of the immense types of mammals that roamed the earth providing evidence that many animal species became extinct in a global catastrophe. And most remarkable of all, ONLY LAND MAMMALS became extinct in any appreciable numbers. Sea and plant species are basically the same today as in pre-catastrophic times.

Anthropologist P.S. Martin writes: "Survival of the small, includes survival of the pelagic [water-living creatures]…the Pleistocene-Recent boundary cannot be recognized by marine guide fossils…At no time in the Pleistocene was there massive marine extinction...Nor were the largest mammals of the world, the cetaceans [water-living mammals such as porpoises], affected by late-Pleistocene extinction.

"Finally, late-Pleistocene extinction is not evident in the plant kingdom (P. S. Martin, "*Prehistoric Overkill," in Pleistocene Extinctions*, edited by P. S. Martin and H. E. Wright, Jr., New Haven: Yale University, 1967, pp. 78, 79).

But why is this so? Why were ONLY land-living, air-breathing, mammal species exterminated? Why did plants seem to survive the catastrophe and grow back into the same species? The answer should be evident. All land-living, air-breathing animals and birds life died in the Flood. Only those in Noah’s ark survived. All sea-life survived the Flood. And plant life, though devastated by the Flood was able to grow back quickly after the Flood. Thus, the fossil record provides solid evidence for Noah’s Flood, and agrees completely with its detailed description in the Bible.

*Proof #5: Was Noah’s Ark Big Enough*

Many scoffers argue that Noah’s ark was not big enough to carry the huge number of animals and their food supplies for more than a year. Therefore, they dismiss the Genesis Flood account as a myth. But let’s look at the figures.

Noah did not have to take two of every living creature on board the ark. The specific requirement for the creatures to be taken on board is stated in Genesis 6:19-20 (NKJV): “And of every living thing of all flesh you shall bring two of every sort into the ark, to keep them alive with you; they shall be male and female. Of the birds after their kind, of animals after their kind…"

From these instructions it is clear that there were three requirements for the type of animals that were to go into the ark. They were to be 1) air breathing, 2) living on land, and 3) the Biblical kind, that can interbreed. He did not need to carry any sea creatures in the ark.

For estimating the numbers of animals that Noah had to carry in the ark, the Biblical kind should be understood. It is not the same as species. The Biblical kind is a much broader concept than the species. Many species can be included in a single Biblical kind. The word ‘kind’ is probably closer the modern term ‘genus,’ and in some case the larger unit, the ‘family.’

For example, The Canidae (canine) family includes about 14 genera of dog like animals. These include the dog, coyote, wolf, dingo, jackal, the African wild dog etc. Noah was not required to take the hundreds of species of canines constituting this group. He had to take only the few “kind” that represented all these species. After the Flood, these kinds would reproduce all the species that make up the Canidae family.

Thus, the ark was not required to carry every species of animals, possibly numbering in the millions. Noah had to take along only every Biblical kind numbering in the few thousands.

Many critics argue that it would have been impossible for a eight person crew to care for tens of thousands of animals. The truth is that labor savings methods could have been incorporated into the design. Therefore, the animals would have required very little care once in the ark. For example, Noah could have designed self-feeding, self-watering and self-cleaning systems. The cages of smaller animals could have slanted floors for moving animal wastes into a gutter where it could dry and become inert and odorless, or be composted by bacteria. The stalls for larger animals could have been designed with slatted floors allowing wastes to collect and become dry. With these devices, the waste would not require human handling.

Food could have been loaded into a chute or container on the side of the cages and the animals could self-feed. Extra food could have been loaded in bins nearby. Such techniques are used today in the livestock industry to reduce labor costs. Water could also have been piped into self-filling bows or troughs. Rainwater cistern system could have been used to collect water.

With properly designed systems, most of the animals would have required very little if any care once loaded onto the ark. Studies from the livestock industry have shown that a few people can care for tens of thousands of animals. The ingenuity of ancient people should not be underestimated. The pyramids of Egypt and the seven wonders of the ancient world have not been duplicated since.

The next question is: Was the ark large enough to accommodate all the animals? It is a misconception that the ark was a small vessel. The ark was at the minimum 450 feet long, 75 feet wide and 45 feet high. The capacity of the ark was the equivalent of 569 modern railroad stock cars. That would make a train more than 5 ½ miles long. It was probably the largest sea-going vessel ever built until the late 1800's when metal ships were first constructed (John Whitcomb and Henry Morris, *The Genesis Flood*, 1998 edition, p.10).

The estimates of the average size of animals vary from a small animal like a rabbit to about the size of an average sheep. Being conservative with the calculations, take the average size of the animals on the ark to be that of a sheep.

John Woodmorappe (*Noah's Ark: A Feasibility Study*, 1996, p.7) estimates that the number of animals that Noah needed to take with him in the ark would have been between 2,000 and 16,000.

Whitcomb and Morris on the other hand in their book, *The Genesis Flood*, estimate that approximately 35,000 animals were placed on board the ark (this would account for the sevens – not seven pairs – of clean animals that were carried aboard the ark). Now be more conservative and allow for 5,000 more animals (for a total of 40,000) that may have become extinct after the Flood or may have been improperly excluded from the Biblical ‘kind.’ Here then are the space requirement calculations for carrying the animals aboard the ark.

The average space occupied by an average sheep is about 11.125 ft3. Here we have taken the average size of the animals to be the larger sheep rather than rabbit.

The Volume of the ark = 450x75x45 cu.ft = 1,518,750 cu.ft.

The percentages of space occupied in the ark if there are 2,000 animals is only 1.5%; if 16,000 animals were to be carried aboard the ark it is 11.7% and if 40,000 animals were to be carried aboard the ark, the most conservative estimate of the number of animals and their size, the percentage of space occupied by the animals would only be 29.3%, or just a little more than 1/4th. The rest of the space would be available for other uses in the ark, such as for interior fixtures, living space for Noah’s family, their baggage or other things. All the animals could actually fit in only one deck and a portion of the second deck of the ark.

Thus, when we look at the evidence honestly, we can only conclude that Noah’s Flood was a fact. The Almighty God did really drown that world because of its wickedness, corruption and violence. But above all, Jesus Christ Himself affirmed in Luke 17:26-27 that Noah’s Flood was a fact. He stated: “…as it was in the days of Noe, so shall it be also in the days of the Son of man. They did eat, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark, and the flood came, and destroyed them all.”

***Prophecy About Destruction of the Earth***

Another prophecy about the Flood still being fulfilled today.

When God informed Noah of His intention to destroy all flesh on land, the Bible states in Genesis 6:12-13 (NIV): “12 God saw how corrupt the earth had become, for all the people on earth had corrupted their ways. 13 So God said to Noah, "I am going to put an end to all people, for the earth is filled with violence because of them. I am surely going to destroy both them and the earth.”

Did you catch that? God said He was also going to destroy the earth along with mankind. This was a further curse on the earth in addition to the curse in Adam’s time. Both these curses are still in effect today. That is why we see the crust of the earth broken up, resulting in all the violent volcanic, earthquake, flood, draught, tsunami, hurricane and tornado activity resulting in human death and destruction. Much of the earth remains covered in permafrost, and the geology of the earth has also produced large desert and mountainous areas which are not accessible for food production. Only about 10-15 percent of the earth’s land surface is cultivatable.

Further evidence of the destruction of conditions on earth which were conducive to good human health is that life span of human beings decreased from around 1000 years before the Flood to about 70 years today. Conditions on earth are simply not conducive to human health and longevity. We age and grow old quickly and die.

Of course, so-called German rationalism has made us all believe that the human life span of about 1000 years before the Flood is a myth. But paleontology [which is a science dealing with the life of past geological periods as known from fossil remains] and historical evidence has provided proof that human beings had very long lives at one time.

Paleontology shows that one striking characteristic of the oldest human fossil remains is the extreme longevity characteristic of the skeletons. Sir J. William Dawson writes:

“Another point which strikes us in reading the descriptions of these skeletons is the indication which they seem to present of an extreme longevity. The massive proportions of the body, the great development of the muscular processes, the EXTREME WEARING OF THE TEETH…THE OBLITERATION OF THE SUTURES OF THE SKULL [seams between the various bones of the skull], along with SLOW OSSIFICATION of the ends of the long bones, point in this direction, and seem to indicate a SLOW MATURITY and GREAT LENGTH OF LIFE in this most primitive race” (*The Meeting Place of Geology and History*” by Sir J. William Dawson, pp. 62-63).

These scientific findings do not prove the theory of evolution but support the biblical record that ancients lived close to 1000 years.

Besides the Bible, ancient writers also testify that men lived nearly a thousand years. Josephus mentions this in Antiquities I, III, 9: “Now I have for witnesses to what I have said, all those that have written Antiquities, both among the Greeks and barbarians; for even Manetho, who wrote the Egyptian History, and Berosus, who collected the Chaldean Monuments, and Mochus, and Hestieus, and, besides these, Hieronymus the Egyptian, and those who composed the Phoenician History, agree to what I here say: Hesiod also, and Hecatseus, Hellanicus, and Acusilaus; and, besides these, Ephorus and Nicolaus relate that the ancients lived a thousand years.”

How could these early historians have been sure that the ancients had very long lives? Because Noah and his descendants in the early years after the Flood for 4 generations lived more than 400 years! Shem the son of Noah lived to be 600 years old. Egyptian history records that Shem was a very old high priest. Noah after the Flood died at age 950 years. After the Flood, most peoples around the world maintained king lists which showed the early kings lived long lives. This is recorded history of many peoples on earth after the Flood which is available today. So, they knew for a fact through Noah and his sons, Shem, Ham and Japheth and their wives that those before the Flood lived more than 900 years.

What caused the life spans of human beings to decline after the Flood? After the Flood the earth was very different. Changes in the climate, composition of the atmosphere, loss of water canopy, changes in the geology of the earth, kind of radiation reaching the earth, along with possibly genetic changes wrought by God and other natural factors were responsible for a rapid decline in the life spans of humans and animals. These changes in the earth that shortened human life spans and the destructive forces of nature such as earthquakes, hurricanes, tsunamis, floods, draughts, tornadoes, only about 10-15 percent of the earth’s land being cultivatable are ongoing fulfillment of

God’s prophecy that He would destroy man and the earth.

Only an Almighty God who has total control over the universe, the earth and everything in it could prophesy these great events before and at the time of the Flood and continue to uphold His prophecies for nearly 6,000 years now. Such prophecies are recorded only in the Bible, proving that its words are backed by the power of Almighty God.

*Why did God ‘Destroy’ the Earth*

Why did God choose to ‘destroy’ the earth while drowning the entire world in the Flood? Just imagine people becoming hardened criminals by about age 100, then living nearly 900 more years, getting worse and worse in their criminal behavior. There was no restraint on them. There were no natural disasters in that world before the Flood as a demonstration of God’s power. They had nothing to fear except other human beings with whom they were fighting and forcibly ruling over, and collecting tribute and taxes from them. Since they had nothing to fear, the powerful among them set themselves up as ‘gods’ and demanded that they be worshipped by the rest of humanity. Such hardened criminals could not be reformed despite the warnings issued by Noah.

After the Flood, God decided to cause changes in the earth that would bring natural disasters in which some humans would lose their lives. That would force humanity to acknowledge that they are not in full control of the earth, and that there are much higher powers that exercise full control over the earth and can intervene in the affairs of mankind. God allows humans to die in natural disasters, because He knows He will make them alive once more in a resurrection in the future. Yes, God can kill and make alive. That’s why He ‘destroyed’ the earth in the Flood to allow natural disasters to occur.

**CHAPTER 7**

**PROPHECIES AFTER THE FLOOD**

***A Major Prophecy About the Races***

Not only did God prophesy about the future of humanity in general, He also foretold the future of the three broad races, white, black and yellow on earth. This is how this came about.

Noah himself was racially white, along with his wife and 3 sons Shem, Ham and Japheth. But his 3 sons married women of different races. Shem married a white woman, Ham a black negro woman and Japheth an oriental looking woman. That is how the different races originated after the Flood.

About 45-50 years after the Flood, Noah returned to the activity of growing a vineyard and producing wine. This probably was the first vineyard after the Flood and Noah was probably returning to this activity after many decades. He perhaps forgot the potency of wine and inadvertently got drunk. As a result, when Noah was unaware of his surroundings, somehow he became naked in his tent. Canaan the younger son of

Ham then committed a perverted act with his grandfather Noah.

Notice verse Genesis 9:24: “And Noah awoke from his wine, and knew what his younger son [that is, Ham’s younger son Canaan] had done unto him.” When Ham came to the tent he merely looked on or “saw the nakedness” of his father (vs. 22)! He immediately told his two brothers and they covered him, as described in verse 23: “And Shem and Japheth took a garment, and laid it upon both their shoulders, and went backward, and covered the nakedness of their father; and their faces were backward, and they saw not their father’s nakedness.”

After this incident, what Noah said is recorded in verses 25-27: “And he said, Cursed be Canaan; a servant of servants shall he be unto his brethren. And he said, Blessed be the Lord God of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant. God shall enlarge Japheth, and he shall dwell in the tents of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant.”

Here Noah pronounced a curse on Canaan. Canaan was punished for his sin! A superficial reading of these verses may lead one to conclude that Noah was striking out against Canaan in anger. His words were not uttered in uncontrolled emotion. Noah here was directly inspired by God to make these statements. He was speaking a MAJOR PROPHECY about the races that would affect the fortunes of all peoples after the Flood. Peter the apostle said: “Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation. For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spoke as they were moved by the holy Ghost [spirit] (2 Peter 1:20-21).

Noah’s prophecy concerning the races has proved true through all generations since the Flood and is still being fulfilled today.

Let’s analyze this prophecy. The descendants of Shem are today located mainly among the Semitic and Northwestern European peoples. The descendants of Japheth are found among the Latin, Slavic, and Oriental peoples. Remember Japheth himself was white but had married an oriental woman. So, some of his descendants would be born white, some oriental and some mixed looking. And the descendants of Ham are found primarily among the dark races in black Africa and parts of India.

Now notice what God said about the future status of each of Noah's three sons in world-wide terms. First, Shem: "Blessed be the Lord God of Shem ..." This expression shows that the knowledge of God would be preserved among the descendants of Shem -- a prophetic fact true to this day. The knowledge of the true God has been preserved among the sons of Shem while the descendants of Ham and Japheth have received their little understanding of God through Shem's offspring! God’s blessings also imply material prosperity.

Next, Japheth: “God shall enlarge Japheth.” This means that they would spread out and experience great growth in population. The proof of fulfilment of this prophecy is the fact that the greatest concentrations of earth's population exist in the Orient. Yet they would live under the influence of Shem, which is what is meant by the next phrase "he shall dwell in the tents of Shem!”

Lastly, the descendants of Ham except for Canaan are not mentioned in the prophecy. The descendants of Ham, the black race, were not given any special blessings. Many countries descended from him are some of the poorest nations on earth, and live in squalor, poverty and disease. The descendants of Canaan were destined to be "servants of servants" in this world. Presumably it is Canaan’s children scattered among nations after Joshua drove them out of the land of Canaan throughout Asia, Africa, North and South America, as well as in Europe that have been reduced to the general status of servants. In nearly every nation they would constitute the lowest classes.

But why did God not pronounce any blessings on the descendants of Ham? It has to do with Canaan’s sin, which earned him the curses, and Ham’s personal attitude under the influence of his Negro wife, the pre-Flood Naamah, the daughter of Lamech which earned him no blessings from God. In pre-Flood society the charge to make the world one race through interracial marriages was led by the dark descendants of Cain, particularly those of Lamech and Zillah. Naamah was their daughter. They successfully achieved this goal because they were the leading mighty and technologically advanced people of that world. If they had achieved similar success after the Flood, they would have continued on the same path of forced interracial marriages, and the result would have been the same: the world would have become one racially, socially, culturally, and of one pagan religion led by the black descendants of Ham.

In fact, after the Flood, the son and grandson of Ham, Cush and Nimrod, started on precisely that same path. They rebelled against God and Noah and separated themselves from the other descendants of Noah to build their own society and religion opposed to the true God. Then they went about building a great empire to bring the entire world under their control. Cush and Nimrod were also forcing interracial marriages. They would have achieved the same goal as before the Flood of making the world one religion, one society, one race, if they had not been stopped by direct intervention from God. This intervention came in the form of confusing the language of mankind at the Tower of Babel which led to races being separated. And then Nimrod was executed by Shem for his many crimes, probably at God’s command.

Canaan’s descendants also followed their ancestor in committing sexual perversions. That is why God gave the laws to Israel in Leviticus 18 against sexual perversions and incest. This is confirmed by Leviticus 18:27: “(For all these abominations have the men of the land done, which were before you, and the land is defiled.)” In addition, the inhabitants of Sodom and Gomorrah were descendants of Canaan (Genesis 10:19), who perished when God rained fire and brimstone on them for their sexual perversions. Later God decided to destroy the Canaanites utterly and give their land over to the Israelites. Some of them escaped destruction and fled to other nations, where they were forced to give up their perversions.

Now think of the significance and impact of this prophecy! Years before the Tower of Babel, God foretold the status of the white, yellow, and dark races for all future generations. So, Noah’s prophecy given soon after the Flood, now about 4,300 years ago is still being fulfilled today proving that the words of the Bible are backed by the power of Almighty God who declares great events and then continues to bring them to pass in precise detail over thousands of years.

To appreciate why God of the Bible gave further prophecies, we should first briefly understand man’s history for the first 2,000 years from the pages of the Bible. I have reconstructed that history in my two books titled “*Satan vs God: From the Beginning to the Flood*” *Volume 1* and “*Satan vs God: From the Flood to Abraham’s Call” Volume 2*. The second book covers the period from the Flood till the time God began to deal with Abraham. This brief history in the next chapter has been condensed from the two volumes.

**CHAPTER 8**

**MAN’S ANCIENT HISTORY IN BRIEF**

[The source for the following brief history of man is the author’s two books on ancient history titled: “*Satan vs God: From the Beginning to the Flood”* Volume 1 and “*Satan vs God: From the Flood to Abraham’s Call*” Volume 2.]

Even though some don’t believe it, most have heard of the Bible story that God initially created Adam and Eve and placed them in the Garden of Eden. They could eat of every fruit in the Garden except of the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil. But under Satan’s lying influence they disobeyed God and ate of the forbidden fruit. As a result, they were expelled from the Garden to build their civilization on their own with little guidance from God.

Their very firstborn son Cain murdered his righteous brother Abel. As punishment Cain was separated from the rest of Adam’s children to build his own civilization. In stubborn rebellion against and hatred of God Cain refused to raise domestic animals and continued to be a farmer. But his agricultural pursuits came to nothing because without maintaining the fertility of the soil with animal manure, the soil soon depleted. So, Cain was forced to constantly move to find new land that would yield crops. As a result, he became a vagabond on earth.

At that time mankind had no good metal-tipped weapons (because the science of metallurgy had not yet been discovered) to hunt clean wild animals such as deer, wild sheep, goats and oxen. These animals were too swift for them. So, to supplement their poor crops, children of Cain were forced to hunt the slow-moving unclean animals such as the mammoths, elephants, bears, hyenas and the like. Of course, the other children of Adam faced no such problem because they kept domestic animals such as cows, sheep and goats.

According to the ancient historian Josephus, after wandering the earth for a century and a half, Cain came to live near Adam’s other children. He saw them living in relative ease and comfort because of the animals they kept for meat, milk, and for maintaining the fertility of the soil with manure. Cain and his descendants still refused to keep animals. He then began to make a living by robbing crops and animals from the families of his brothers, Adam’s other children.

Then Cain saw that humanity needed items like salt, and building materials such as naturally occurring bitumen or asphalt. He simply occupied the sources of supply and called them his own. He then began to sell those things to anybody who could pay for them for what he needed. He also continued to rob and plunder, thus becoming a fugitive from the rest of society. For protection he built a great wall around his city. Then he started fencing the grazing land that Adam’s other children used and called it his own. Others would have to pay him for the right to graze their animals in that land.

Finally, just like the Mafia of recent years, he forced people to pay him tribute, or he would rob and plunder them or do violence to them. People could buy protection from his robberies and plunder by paying tribute. That is what the Bible calls Cain’s Way, the way of life he originated, which all of humanity has followed ever since.

Cain also continued to hate God and did not want to worship Him because of being rebuked when his offering of grains and vegetables was not accepted. He and his descendants also deified themselves and began to call themselves gods. Their names ending in el, meaning the ‘eternal’ prove that. This is the origin of ancestor worship among Cain’s descendants.

As punishment for his continually multiplying sins, non-white children began to be born to Cain. Thus, all the non-white races originated with Cain. In the meantime, the children Cain had left in other parts of the world when he wandered the earth also grew into tribes. Since they did not keep domestic animals, and continued to follow Cain’s wrong agricultural practices, and still did not have effective weapons to hunt clean animals such as deer, sheep and goats, they continued to follow the herds of mammoths, and elephants for their meat. They also lived a degenerate lifestyle in caves, and even became cannibals. Archeology has discovered their remains.

In the meantime, Cain’s descendants became worse and worse in following Cain’s lifestyle. Then rivalry developed between Cain and his descendant Lamech for control of as much of the population as possible for collecting tribute. Lamech also started the practice of taking multiple wives and marrying interracially. He began to take wives from the white descendants of the line of Seth, the obedient son of Adam after Abel was murdered. Some of these wives were taken by force.

Then Lamech and his children began to make great material progress. The greatest progress was made by four of Lamech’s children mentioned in the Bible in Genesis 4:20-22. Jabal became a great herdsman and kept vast herds of cattle. His brother Jubal became the greatest musician of his day and began to produce great musical instruments. Their half-brother Tubalcain developed the art of smelting and began to produce metals such as iron and brass and great metal products. Though the activities of their sister Naamah are not mentioned, according to Jewish tradition she originated the production of cloth and textiles. All this material progress brought immense wealth to Lamech and his family.

But they still hated the true God and would have nothing to do with Him. They continued to widen their influence forcing the rest of humanity to pay tribute. They deified themselves as gods, set up metal idols of themselves and demanded that they be worshipped by the people. Today we know Lamech as the god Jupiter, Jabal as Hercules, Jubal as the god Apollo, Tubalcain the inventor of the art of smelting to extract metals from ore as Vulcan, and their sister Naamah as the goddess Athena.

They were not content merely to have the rest of humanity worship them. They also under the threat of violence, torture and death forced the rest of humanity to stop worshipping the true God. They forced interracial marriages; themselves setting the example by taking scores of wives and mistresses.

Their influence had become so great that Lamech is the only human being in man’s history who seems to have come close to ruling the entire world. Conditions had reached such a stage that only Noah and his wife, were left racially white, and only Noah refused to give up the worship of the true God. Lamech then threatened Noah’s life. Noah had to flee to protect himself and his family.

Lamech then died of old age. But after his death conditions on earth became manifold worse. Many strong men around the world started fighting each other to increase their influence. There was no one to enforce the rule of law. The strong men killed innocent people at whim, and some did it even for sport. Can you imagine tens of thousands of strong men vying for control of as many people as they could through force and intimidation, challenging, fighting and killing each other in individual combat? The result was that the world had become saturated with violence, and the thought of every human being was only evil continually. Then these strongmen wanted to be worshipped as gods and forced others to stop worshipping the true God.

When God saw the conditions on earth, He decided to destroy everything on land and in the sky in a Flood and save only Noah, his racially pure 3 sons Shem, Ham and Japheth and their four wives. But first God warned all of humanity through Noah for about 100 years to repent. When no one did, God drowned them all in the Flood. Perhaps you can now appreciate why God drowned that entire world because of its wickedness. They will be a sobered bunch when God resurrects them again to a physical life and gives them one more chance to repent and accept His way of life as the only way that can produce happiness, joy, peace, harmony and prosperity for all creation.

***Conditions after the Flood***

Noah, his wife, his 3 sons Shem, Ham and Japheth were all racially white. Shem had married a white wife. But Japheth married an oriental looking wife, a descendant of Cain, and Ham had married the negro Naamah, the famous daughter of Lamech, also a descendant of Cain. That’s how the 3 basic races, white, black and oriental, were preserved through the Flood.

After the Flood, Noah instructed his family in God’s way of life, but Naamah who was worshipped as a goddess herself before the Flood instructed her black children in the way their family had lived and ruled the world before the Flood. Japheth’s wife instructed her children in the way of life of ancestor worship that her family followed before the Flood.

Then the incident of Noah inadvertently getting drunk and Canaan the son of Ham and Naamah committing a perverted act occurred. This led Noah to pronounce a curse on Canaan, and prophesy about the future of the three races of his family.

Before the Flood Lamech had ruled almost the entire world! Because of interracial marriages, the world had become filled with violence. God wanted to prevent one man from ruling the world again and prevent interracial marriages because it led to violence. So, God gave Noah a plan to colonize different areas of the earth. This would separate the various races, and each would develop their own civilization, and not try to force their rule over others.

Noah took a ten-year long journey with his sons to different areas to explore lands to send colonies to. While they were gone, Ham’s son Cush, which means black, probably seduced and raped or had an illegal relationship with the strikingly beautiful young Semiramis, a great granddaughter of Japheth. She became pregnant and the black Nimrod was born to her as a result of that relationship.

When Noah returned from his journey, he refused to let Cush interracially marry Semiramis, and because he was already married to his black sister, probably with straight hair like Indians, and had children by her. Noah simply was not going to allow conditions to develop as they had developed before the Flood due to forced interracial marriages.

At that time wild animals multiplied faster than human beings and began to threaten the tiny human population. Nimrod the physically powerful young black son of Cush and Semiramis rose to the occasion and began to protect humans from wild animals. He began to organize hunting parties to hunt and kill wild animals which drove them away from human populations. Thus, Nimrod began to be looked upon as a savior of mankind.

Noah then began to implement God’s plan and send out colonies to different areas of the earth. But Cush, Nimrod, Semiramis, and Shem’s son Asshur and a majority of humanity rebelled against God’s colonization plan. They refused to go to their assigned territories. Instead they separated from Noah and those loyal to him and went to the land of Shinar in modern day Iraq and set up their own civilization. Thus, after the Flood rebellion against God and Noah was led by the black part of the human family, though they had white and oriental followers as well.

These rebels began to hate the true God and in rebellion set up their own god, the Sun-Fire-Serpent god. They developed their own pagan worship system and set up a very high tower as a sanctuary for worship and began building a city. Cush and Nimrod became the high priests of the god they had set up.

Cush and Nimrod were also basically rebelling against not being allowed to marry whomever they wanted, mainly white women. Now they were free from Noah’s influence and again began to force interracial marriages among those who followed them.

Just as Nimrod’s great grandfather and Cush’s grandfather Lamech had done before the Flood, they too began to develop plans to rule all of humanity, and make the world of one race, one religion [their religion] and one society, under their control. To accomplish that they would probably have to assassinate Noah, his loyal son Shem and those with them who would refuse to come under their rule.

When God saw their plans, He decided to intervene. He confused the language of mankind and destroyed the tower (Genesis 11:1-9). Because of confusion of language men could no longer freely communicate with everyone else, but only with those of their own race. They were forced to separate by race and move away from the city they were building.

After the destruction of the Tower and confusion of language, Cush, Nimrod and Semiramis began to pick up the pieces of their empire. Their goal to control the entire world population still remained. At that time the population of the world had reached only 5,000. Slightly less than half that number were loyal to Noah and Shem and had started going out in colonies as instructed by them. But they had not travelled far. So, the population of the world was still concentrated around the Middle East, in and around the land of Israel, Iraq, coasts of Egypt and the Mediterranean in Europe.

The destruction of the tower and the confusion of language were not lost on those in the Cush and Nimrod camp. They knew that the destruction of their project was from God, and they noticed that the language they could understand was only of those of their race, according to the division Noah had made for colonizing the earth. This caused a division in the Cush and Nimrod camp. Asshur the white son of Shem separated himself and built Nineveh to the north of the cities Cush and Nimrod were building. This is described in Genesis 10:10-12: “10 And the beginning of his [that is, Nimrod’s] kingdom was Babel [meaning Babylon], and Erech, and Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar. 11 Out of that land went forth Asshur, and builded Nineveh, and the city of Rehoboth, and Calah. And Resen between Nineveh and Calah: the same is a great city.” However, Asshur and his descendants at that time still were part of Nimrod’s empire, and worked with him, under his rule.

For the efficient working of people on their projects of building cities, places of worship and growing food, Cush [the Menes of Egypt and known as Manu in the Indian scriptures] had organized all the workers in their camps according to the tasks performed by them, as he determined what their ‘aptitude’ was. But this division of labor was rigid. Those working on growing food would always remain in agriculture and they and their descendants would not be allowed to change their work to construction and building. Those assigned the task of keeping the cities clean would always attend to that task. Cush and Nimrod enforced their rigid division of labor on all. The people could not choose what tasks they wanted to perform according to what they enjoyed or had an aptitude for. Such division was passed along to the children also as they grew up.

The system Cush had originated which he and Nimrod enforced became highly oppressive. The people could not get away from it though many longed to do so, because of the fear of being killed for their rebellion. But others still did not forget the deliverance brought to them by Nimrod from wild animals and remained loyal to him, accepting their oppressive division of labor.

The ancient Jewish historian Josephus describes the result of the policies of Cush and Nimrod in Antiquities I, IV, 2: “He [that is Nimrod] also gradually changed the government into Tyranny…seeing no other way of turning men away from the fear of God, but to bring them into a constant dependence on his power…” This was the nature of the merciless, brutal, oppressive, freedom-less regime that was developing in Babylon.

We see the continuation of this horrible and oppressive system in the development of the rigid caste system in India and to some extent in Egypt. The straight-haired dark Indians were Cush’s descendants. Raamah the son of Cush mentioned in Genesis 10:7 is none other than the Rama of Ramayana who was deified by his descendants. And Nimrod is being worshipped in India as Krishana. Both the Mahabharata and the Ramayana glorify the caste system developed by Cush, the father of both Rama and Nimrod.

Cush, Nimrod and Semiramis continued to develop their worship system opposed to the worship of the true God. At this time for the first time in human history Nimrod introduced live human and infant sacrifices in his worship system. The live humans being sacrificed were probably captives who rebelled against Nimrod’s religion.

Some evidence of human and infant sacrifices instituted by Nimrod can be found in the practice of Sati in India before the 19th century A.D., which is the wife jumping alive into the fire that is cremating her dead husband and immolating herself. Such evil practices are glorified in the Hindu scriptures. The British had to outlaw the practice of Sati in India to end it in the 19th century.

Other evidence of infant sacrifice by burning alive comes from the Bible itself. Nimrod was later deified as the god Baal. The Canaanites were Baal or Nimrod worshippers and infant sacrifices, i.e. burning them alive in the fire, was one of their practices. That is why God ordered the Israelites to exterminate them. But part of the population of ancient Israel ended up adopting their practices.

Can you imagine the hideous religious practices of these pagans? How would you feel if you were forced to give up your infant to be burnt alive as a sacrifice to the pagan god Baal or the Sun-fire-serpent god? Such was the tyrannical rule of Nimrod.

Cush and Nimrod continued to promote and force interracial marriages. Evidence of forced interracial marriages can be found all over the world. Much of Japhethites, the ancestor of the Oriental peoples had joined Cush and Nimrod in their rebellion.

Evidence of their mixing with blacks can be found in South and Southeast China, Tibet, Nepal, Southeast Asia, among Native Americans in north, but particularly South America. Many in the pure white line of Arphaxad were lured to become priests with grants of lands and tax free status. They were also forced to mix with the black and yellow races. Their mixed descendants are the Brahmins of India and others are mixed among the Egyptians. Later interracial mixing has also continued to occur.

*Rebellion against the Rule of Cush and Nimrod*

The camps of Noah and Cush and Nimrod were not completely isolated. There was movement between them. Some escaped the camp of Cush and Nimrod to join up with Noah’s camp, while others who had gone out in colonies came and settled in Cush and Nimrod’s camp. One such person was Magog, the ancestor of the Chinese people, the son of Japheth. He and his descendants had gone out as colonists as instructed by Noah. They were allotted the land of China and were given maps by Noah on how to get there. This is not fiction. These maps were made by the Creator Himself and given to Noah as proved in the second volume of my book on ancient history.

Magog and his children took the north route to get to China over many centuries. But because of the cold conditions during their journeys Magog decided with a part of his children to seek out the camp of Cush and Nimrod, as he had heard they were building cities to live in and life was more comfortable.

Magog soon got a taste of the brutal and oppressive conditions there. He objected to the forced interracial marriages of his descendants with the blacks. As a result, he was imprisoned by Nimrod. This eventually led most of the descendants of Japheth to rebel against the rule of Cush and Nimrod. As this resistance from the Japhethites got stronger over the years, Cush saw the handwriting on the wall. He departed for Ethiopia with his children with frizzy hair along with Semiramis to the land allotted to him by Noah according to God’s plan. Nimrod tried to maintain his empire in Babylon alone, but as the children of Japheth got stronger and stronger, he too was forced out and went to Egypt. Two years later his father Cush disappears from Egyptian history, presumably murdered by his illegitimate son Nimrod and his mother and later wife Semiramis.

For the next 28 years Nimrod and Semiramis continued to propagate their pagan religion among the descendants of Ham in Africa, as well as the Canaanites. Nimrod likely also travelled and propagated his religion among the other sons of Cush with the straight hair who were still around the Middle East, but were destined to end up in India according to the allotment made for them in God’s colonization plan. He also had started making inroads into Italy, Spain and areas along the shores of the Mediterranean in Europe where some of the fairer descendants of Japheth had settled at that time. He was now beginning to make inroads into areas where Shem was active. At this stage, probably God decided Nimrod should be executed for his many crimes including live human and infant sacrifices. This is the first execution in the history of mankind ordered by God.

At that time Nimrod was in Egypt. Shem immediately set about the task. He came to Egypt from Europe and convinced 70 princes in Egypt and surrounding areas to join him in bringing Nimrod to justice. As soon as Nimrod got word of the plan, he wasted no time and attacked Shem and those with him. Nimrod and his forces were defeated, and he fled to Italy. Shem followed him and found him after a year, executed him, cut off his body into pieces and sent the pieces to different areas of the population which was still all mainly in the Middle East as a warning against apostatizing. Noah was still alive and well at that time and would live about 150 more years.

Thus, after the Flood, the black part of the human family led the rebellion against God. Now perhaps we can appreciate why God prophesied the future of the 3 races through Noah the way He did. Even after the Flood, the black part of the human family ruled a majority of mankind. Over the centuries they were to lose their influence. If God had continued to let them materially prosper and rule the rest of mankind with force, they would have driven all of humanity away from the true God and forced everyone to marry interracially. The result would have been the same as before the Flood: worldwide violence, corruption and bloodshed.

After Nimrod was executed, a fear fell on the entire world population, which at that time was small and concentrated largely in and around the Middle East and southern Europe, around the shores of the Mediterranean Sea. They could no longer openly worship their false Sun-fire-serpent god for fear of being executed. After Nimrod’s execution, Semiramis fled to the delta region of Egypt, and from there to Babylon. The world population at that time was only around 90,000.

At that time Noah left Armenia and took a 115-year long journey to visit the colonists he had sent to inquire about their welfare. When he reached Egypt, he saw that his descendants there were living a degenerate life style. He spent 50 years there, countering the pagan teachings of Cush, Nimrod, Semiramis and his own son Ham who by that time had been thoroughly corrupted by his wife Naamah. Noah’s work with the Egyptians was to lay the foundation of Egypt’s greatness in the centuries following.

Meanwhile Semiramis fled to Babylon and had an illegitimate son with Ninus II the son of Asshur and named him Horus. She soon returned to Egypt with her young son and reigned there. Horus subsequently became the ruler in Egypt. She continued to develop and propagate her pagan religion from Egypt.

Because of the fear of being executed for propagating paganism, Semiramis now began developing her Mystery religion, which later would become known as the Babylonian Mystery Religion. In this religion they outwardly worshipped objects such as trees, and creatures such as the bull, but those initiated in the mysteries knew exactly what they were worshipping. Bull worship was Nimrod worship and tree worship (which has come down to our time as the Christmas tree) was actually worship of Semiramis. Since Nimrod was worshipped as a bull or calf, his mother Semiramis would obviously be worshipped as a cow. That is the origin of cow worship among the Hindu in Indian.

Those not initiated in the mysteries just followed the priests in their worship without really knowing what they were worshipping. Over the centuries even the priests forgot what they were actually worshipping. But they continue to follow traditions and worship cows, trees and other objects even today.

It seems at this time Satan and the demons for the first time understood the very first prophecy given in the Bible in Genesis 3:15 (NKJV): “And I [that is God] will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her seed, it shall bruise your head, and you shall bruise his heel.”

This is actually a prophecy of the woman’s Seed coming to earth to redeem mankind from death, making eternal life possible. That promised Seed was Jesus Christ. Satan bruising his heel was understood to mean that Satan would cause Him to be put to death. But He would bruise Satan’s head by defeating him and ending his rule on earth.

It seems Satan then immediately began developing a counterfeit religion through Semiramis centered around this prophecy. Nimrod was already considered a savior of mankind for having saved humans from wild animals. Now Semiramis deified him as the promised Seed of the woman sent to save mankind. She claimed he had been killed to save mankind. She then deified herself as the Mother of the Savior and began to be worshipped. That is how worship of the Madonna and Child originated with Semiramis soon after the Flood. It did not originate with the sacrifice of Jesus Christ. The Bible nowhere tells us that Mary is to be worshipped in any way. Worship of the Madonna and Child in mainstream Christianity is an ancient tradition going back above 2000 years before the birth of Jesus Christ, foisted on Christianity by the great false Church based in Rome.

All the false worship traditions, customs and festivals such as Christmas and Easter of modern Christianity are nowhere required in the Bible. Our modern word Easter comes from the name “Ishtar” which was the Assyrian name of Semiramis. Worship of the Trinity, the cross, hot cross buns of Easter, colored eggs and rabbits, the tree of Christmas, worship of the bull, calf and cow, worship of the Sun god on Sunday, worship of relics, start of the new year in the dead of winter, all originated with Semiramis soon after the Flood and have been foisted on a gullible Christianity by the false Church. Worship of idols had originated before the Flood and remained an important part of the religion originated by Semiramis.

*Assyrian Conquests*

Not only did innovations in pagan religion increase and flourish under Satan’s guidance through Semiramis, the religion began to be enforced on other people. The main instrument to accomplish this after Nimrod’s death was Asshur, the son of Shem, and his descendants. After Nimrod’s death, the Babylonians who were mainly Japhethites mixed with other peoples and the Chaldeans who were descendants of the white Arphaxad were active in Babylon whereas the Assyrians [whose modern day descendants are the Germans] became active in consolidating power north of them in the cities they had built.

Much of the world population was still living around the Middle East and coasts of the Mediterranean and had not moved too far away. Asshur, the ancestor of the Assyrians then under the generalship of his son Ninus II began conquests of the nations around to impose tribute on them. And they had also begun building a fortified city, Nineveh, with very high and thick walls to protect themselves. The conquests took 17 years enabling the Assyrians to put many peoples under tribute.

The Assyrians were extremely brutal in their conquests. Ninus II had some rulers murdered with all their children so as to leave no heir. Here is what Diodorus of Sicily the ancient historian writes in his “*Historical Library*” Book II, chapter 1, pp 100 about Ninus II:

“Ninus therefore, the Assyrian king, with the prince of Arabia, his assistant, with a numerous army invaded the Babylonians then next bordering upon him: for the Babylon that is now [that is, in the time of Diodorus] was not built at that time; but the province of Babylon had in it then many other considerable cities, whose inhabitants he easily subdued (being rude and unexpert in matters of war), and imposed upon them a yearly tribute; but carried away the king with all his children prisoners, and soon after put them to death…

“Being thus strengthened, he invaded Media [i.e. the Medes, the descendants of Japheth], whose king Pharnus coming out against him with a mighty army was utterly routed, and lost most of his men, and was taken prisoner with his wife and seven children, and afterwards crucified.”

After 17 years of conquests when the Assyrians had become masters of that part of the world, they lived in their well-fortified cities with Nineveh their capital and tribute was brought to them on a yearly basis by all of their subject nations. The only way people could get away from the oppression of the Assyrians was to move away from them.

And they did move away, led by God in their migrations to the places He had allotted them in His colonization plan given to Noah.

But the brutal treatment of other rulers by the Assyrians was not forgotten. They planned and plotted against the life of Ninus II. As mentioned earlier, Ninus II had a son named Horus with Semiramis. The year Ninus II finished his conquests, Semiramis left Egypt permanently and came and settled in Babylon. She continued to develop and spread her Babylonian Mystery religion from there. She literally committed fornication with the kings of the nations around, which included most nations still living close by, which became a means also to spread her religion. That is why myths of all peoples have so much in common because all peoples followed Semiramis’ religion.

Ninus II could not be brought to justice by conquest because of the well-fortified city Nineveh he lived in. So, the kings around hatched a plot with Semiramis. Remember Semiramis herself was a Japhethite, and most of the kings brutally treated by Ninus II were Japhethites. Semiramis now renewed her relationship with Ninus II and could easily move in and out of Nineveh. Ninus II again became very fond of her and probably married her this time.

Then Semiramis probably played a prank on Ninus II and asked him to give her royal authority for 5 days. She held a sumptuous banquet for the army commanders and the nobility so that all her subjects could observe that she ruled. These commanders and the nobility included many from among the provinces that Ninus II had conquered and were now allied with the Assyrians. She then secretly committed Ninus II to jail. Then she carried out Ninus II’s plans and invaded Armenia in which she was successful. She then had Ninus II assassinated and ruled in his place. Thus, though Ninus II could not be conquered because of his highly fortified capital city, he was brought down by intrigue.

This brought Horus, the illegitimate son of Ninus II and Semiramis back from Europe and a struggle followed between him and his mother for the throne of Assyria. After many years Semiramis fled to Armenia and was slain in a battle with her son Horus.

*Assyrians and Abraham*

Even after the death of Semiramis, the Babylonian Mystery religion she had developed had taken deep hold over the people. As mentioned earlier, the pure white descendants of Arphaxad the son of Shem had been lured through financial incentives to become priests of the pagan religion. They settled among the ancestors of the Indian Cushites, or Kassites or Kshatriyas, where they are known as the Brahmins today, and among the Egyptians, Babylonians and in Italy. They propagated the pagan religion of Semiramis as enforced by the Assyrians, or through cunning craftiness in Italy and Europe where enforcement was not possible. In Italy where Noah had settled, these priests convinced the people that they were honoring Noah, but cunningly taught the Babylonian Mystery religion, telling the people that Noah himself had preached that way.

Besides the priests who had dispersed among different peoples, there were other descendants of Arphaxad living in Mesopotamia. The Assyrians began to bring them into subjection. Because of the treacherous ways of the Assyrians, all these peoples were forced into living ways of lying, deceit, trickery and intrigue. They were forced to abandon the ways of truth and began to serve other gods.

Joshua 24:2 records: “And Joshua said unto all the people, Thus says the LORD God of Israel, Your fathers dwelt on the other side of the flood in old time, even Terah, the father of Abraham, and the father of Nachor: and they served other gods.” This shows that Abraham’s father served other gods and idols and not the true God. Later we have the example of Jacob learning the ways of trickery from his mother Rebecca who came from that area and tricked his brother Esau and his father Isaac out of Esau’s birthright and blessing. We learn of the trickery of Laban the brother of Rebecca in his dealings with his nephew Jacob. We see the competitive dealings between the two wives of Jacob, the sisters Leah and Rachel. It was the treacherous influence of the Assyrians that had turned away these descendants of Arphaxad from the pure ways of God. They are the only ones who had retained the knowledge of the true God. But through financial incentives to become priests of the pagan religion and from pressure from the Assyrians, all descendants of Arphaxad had also turned away from the true God.

So, after the Flood, a great struggle was waged between the pagans and those loyal to Noah and Shem to impose their religion over all of humanity. Paganism won out and all of humanity was corrupted and began to follow pagan worship practices. The Assyrians began to impose the pagan religion by force on the descendants of Shem. In about 400 years after the Flood, all of humanity once again turned away from worship of the true God.

This is the world into which the 3 sons of Terah, Haran, Abraham and Nahor were born. Terah and Nahor had turned away from the true God to serve other gods. By this time Noah had passed away, but Shem was still alive. There can be no doubt that Haran and Abraham went and visited Shem in the Danubian Valley where he lived in his old age, and learnt about the true God from him. In the early years of Abraham, they had respite from Assyrian oppression because Horus and his mother Semiramis were engaged in a tussle to gain or maintain control of the Assyrian Empire. But after gaining control of the Empire, Horus began imposing the pagan religion on all peoples. Haran and Abraham were bound to come into conflict with Horus and his governors and lesser Assyrian rulers. Jewish and Arab traditions tell us that Horus persecuted Abraham.

The Bible records that Haran and Abraham lived in Ur of the Chaldees. This was also the place where the Chaldean priests, the descendants of Arphaxad lived. The Chaldean priests had knowledge of the eclipses of the sun and moon and had learnt astronomy from Noah. So they could predict the movement of the celestial bodies. To gain hold over the people they falsely taught that they could communicate with the Sun and Moon gods who would tell them about their movements. But Abraham countered their teaching, having possibly learnt astronomy directly from Shem. He began to argue and teach that the sun and moon could not control their own motions but were subject to the laws of the supreme God. Their movements could be predicted. The sun and moon were not gods, but there is a Supreme God who governed their motions. He proved that the creation was proof of the existence of the true Supreme God. This brought Abraham into conflict with the Chaldean priesthood as described by Josephus the ancient historian. The Chaldean priesthood envisioned their lofty status in society slipping away. Josephus records that they raised a tumult against Abraham.

At this time, probably Haran and Abraham refused to pay tribute to the Assyrians. One of their lesser rulers Count Sattan came against them to enforce tribute. In this battle Haran the older brother of Abraham died. Abraham had to flee for his life to the Danube Valley with his wife Sarah. But he had to leave his Assyrian wife Susanna and their son Achim behind as the Assyrians would not harm one of their own.

After a few years when Count Sattan died, Abraham decided to return to his former home in Ur of the Chaldees to be with his wife Susanna and their son Achim. But God changed Abraham’s plans from then onwards. God appeared to him for the first time, called him and gave him a command and a new plan for his life. This is recorded in Genesis 12:1-5 (NKJV):

“1 Now the Lord had said to Abram: "Get out of your country, from your family and from your father's house, to a land that I will show you. 2 I will make you a great nation; I will bless you and make your name great; and you shall be a blessing. 3 I will bless those who bless you, and I will curse him who curses you; and in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed." 4 So Abram departed as the Lord had spoken to him, and Lot went with him. And Abram was seventy-five years old when he departed from Haran. 5 Then Abram took Sarai his wife and Lot his brother's son, and all their possessions that they had gathered, and the people whom they had acquired in Haran, and they departed to go to the land of Canaan. So, they came to the land of Canaan.”

For about 2,000 years since the creation of Adam and Eve, God worked with all of humanity in general. But twice all of humanity had turned its back on Him: once before the Flood and now in about 400 years after the Flood. All except Abraham, Lot, Abraham’s wife Sarah and Shem, who was still alive, had turned away to worship other gods. God then decided to no longer work with all of humanity. He decided to create a model nation as mentioned in His promise to Abraham, with which He would work, bless that nation for the entire world to see as an example and learn from. Just as before the Flood God found Noah who was completely loyal to His way of life and worked with him to save humanity through the Flood, He now chose to work with one man, Abraham, who remained loyal to Him after the Flood when the rest of humanity had succumbed to paganism. The next set of great prophecies and promises of God relate to Abraham and his descendants.

These prophecies were not after thoughts. All this was thought out and planned even before the foundation of the world. In Deuteronomy 32:8 Moses states: “8 When the Most High divided their inheritance to the nations, when He separated the sons of Adam, He set the boundaries of the peoples according to the number of the children of Israel.” This states that when God gave inheritance to the sons of Adam, He did it according to the number of children that would be born to Israel after the Flood. This means the inheritance of the nations was pre-planned even at the time of Adam and Eve. So, when Abraham was asked to go to the land of Canaan, he was asked by God to go to his inheritance which the descendants of Canaan had usurped in the rebellion against God’s colonization plan.

Abraham was completely obedient to God and did not question why He asked him to go to Canaan. He simply obeyed God’s instructions and departed.

**CHAPTER 9**

**GOD’S PROMISES TO ABRAHAM**

God appeared to Abraham for the first time and gave him a command and a new plan for his life. This is recorded in Genesis 12:1-5 (NKJV):

“1 Now the Lord had said to Abram: "Get out of your country, from your family and from your father's house, to a land that I will show you. 2 I will make you a great nation; I will bless you and make your name great; and you shall be a blessing. 3 I will bless those who bless you, and I will curse him who curses you; and in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed." 4 So Abram departed as the Lord had spoken to him, and Lot went with him. And Abram was seventy-five years old when he departed from Haran. 5 Then Abram took Sarai his wife and Lot his brother's son, and all their possessions that they had gathered, and the people whom they had acquired in Haran, and they departed to go to the land of Canaan. So, they came to the land of Canaan.”

It is to be noted in these promises that all peoples on earth shall be blessed materially and spiritually through Abraham’s descendants.

Abraham was completely obedient to God and did not question why God asked him to go to Canaan. He did not argue with God to bless him in the land where he was rather than being ask to go to a strange land. He simply obeyed God’s instructions and departed.

God later began to add more details to His promises. Genesis 13:16 adds (NIV): “16 I will make your offspring like the dust of the earth, so that if anyone could count the dust, then your offspring could be counted.” This means descendants of Abraham will increase greatly in population.

God then further expanded the scope of His promises to Abraham in Genesis 17:1-7 (NKJV): “1 When Abram was ninety-nine years old, the Lord appeared to him and said, "I am God Almighty; walk before me and be blameless. 2 I will confirm my covenant between me and you and will greatly increase your numbers." 3 Abram fell facedown, and God said to him, 4 "As for me, this is my covenant with you: You will be the father of many nations. 5 No longer will you be called Abram; your name will be Abraham, for I have made you a father of many nations. 6 I will make you very fruitful; I will make nations of you, and kings will come from you. 7 I will establish my covenant as an everlasting covenant between me and you and your descendants after you for the generations to come, to be your God and the God of your descendants after you. Also I give to you and your descendants after you the land in which you are a stranger, all the land of Canaan, as an everlasting possession; and I will be their God.”

Now the promises include instead of one nation, many nations being formed from the descendants of Abraham, and he becoming an ancestor of kings. Also, God promised him all the land of Canaan in which he was a stranger.

Later when Abraham was willing to offer his son Isaac as a sacrifice, God’s promises to him became *unconditional*. The account is stated in Genesis 22:11-12, 15 -18 (NKJV):

“11 But the Angel of the Lord called to him from heaven and said, "Abraham, Abraham!" So he said, "Here I am." 12 And He said, "Do not lay your hand on the lad, or do anything to him; for now I know that you fear God, since you have not withheld your son, your only son, from Me…15 Then the Angel of the Lord called to Abraham a second time out of heaven, 16 and said: "By Myself I have sworn, says the Lord, because you have done this thing, and have not withheld your son, your only son-- 17 blessing I will bless you, and multiplying I will multiply your descendants as the stars of the heaven and as the sand which is on the seashore; and your descendants shall possess the gate of their enemies. 18 In your seed all the nations of the earth shall be blessed, because you have obeyed My voice."

This time the promise of Abraham’s descendants possessing the gates, meaning narrow land and sea passages of access to enemies’ lands and strategic islands around the world is added.

*Promises to Abraham Passed on to Isaac and Jacob*

God then reconfirmed His covenant or unconditionally binding agreement [meaning Abraham had to do nothing more, but God was binding Himself to do His part and perform His promises to Abraham] with Abraham’s son Isaac and his descendants in Genesis 26:1-5. Then in Genesis 27:26-29, 28:1-4, 10-14, 25:9-12, the covenant and the promises were reconfirmed with Abraham’s grandson Jacob.

In confirmation of God’s promises to Jacob, many interesting details of the promises are revealed. First of all, Jacob received the birthright, which naturally belongs to the firstborn. Esau the firstborn sold the birthright to his younger brother Jacob for bread and stew of lentils.

The *International Standard Bible Encyclopedia* explains that the birthright was "the right belonging naturally to the firstborn son...Such a person ultimately became the head of the family, the line being continued through him. As firstborn he inherited a double portion of the paternal estate...The firstborn was responsible for...exercising authority over the household as a whole" (1979, Vol. 1, "*Birthright*," pp. 515-516).

Isaac pronounced the following blessing on his son Jacob in Genesis 27:28-29 (NKJV): “28 Therefore may God give you of the dew of heaven, of the fatness of the earth, and plenty of grain and wine. 29 Let peoples serve you, and nations bow down to you. Be master over your brethren, and let your mother's sons bow down to you. Cursed be everyone who curses you, and blessed be those who bless you!"

Isaac also let Jacob know that the promises of Abraham were being passed on to him in Genesis 28:3-4 (NRSV): “3 May God Almighty bless you and make you fruitful and numerous, that you may become a company of peoples. 4 May he give to you the blessing of Abraham, to you and to your offspring with you, so that you may take possession of the land where you now live as an alien—land that God gave to Abraham." Here Jacob is promised that his descendants will become a company of peoples, meaning many nations.

God then revealed through Jacob what the birthright and the blessing entailed in Genesis 28:14 (NKJV): “Also your descendants shall be as the dust of the earth; you shall spread abroad to the west and the east, to the north and the south; and in you and in your seed all the families of the earth shall be blessed.”

God promised that peoples and nations would serve the descendants of Jacob and bow down to them, meaning they will be the foremost nations on earth. They would spread around the world in all directions, north, south, east and west, from the Middle East. They would multiply greatly in numbers, as the dust of the earth. These are not idle words. When we consider what God has in store for humanity for eternity in the universe, descendants of Jacob will literally multiply in numbers as the dust of the earth and the stars in heaven.

*Jacob Passes on God’s Promises to his Twelve Sons*

Before Jacob’s twelve sons, God had passed on His promises to Abraham to one son, preferring him over the other son. Abraham’s promises were passed on to Isaac instead of Ishmael. Then Isaac passed on Abraham’s promises to his son Jacob instead of his older son Esau. But then God began to pass on Abraham’s promises collectively to all the twelve sons of Jacob. Among the twelve sons of Jacob, God chose out two sons for special national blessings.

In Genesis 35:11-12 (NKJV) God promises Jacob: “Also God said to him: "I am God Almighty. Be fruitful and multiply; *a nation and a company of nations* shall proceed from you, and kings shall come from your body. 12 The land which I gave Abraham and Isaac I give to you; and to your descendants after you I give this land." Here God promises Jacob that a great nation and a company or commonwealth of nations would proceed from him.

That part of God’s promise Jacob then passed on to his two grandsons, Manasseh and Ephraim, the sons of Joseph in Genesis 48:14-19 (NKJV): “14 Then Israel [Jacob’s other name] stretched out his right hand and laid it on Ephraim's head, who was the younger, and his left hand on Manasseh's head, guiding his hands knowingly, for Manasseh was the firstborn. 15 And he blessed Joseph, and said: "God, before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked, The God who has fed me all my life long to this day, 16 The Angel who has redeemed me from all evil, Bless the lads; Let my name be named upon them, And the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; And let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth." 17 Now when Joseph saw that his father laid his right hand on the head of Ephraim, it displeased him; so he took hold of his father's hand to remove it from Ephraim's head to Manasseh's head. 18 And Joseph said to his father, "Not so, my father, for this one is the firstborn; put your right hand on his head." 19 But his father refused and said, "I know, my son, I know. He also shall become a people, and he also shall be great; but truly his younger brother shall be greater than he, and his descendants shall become a multitude of nations."

So, God’s promise to Jacob that a great nation and a commonwealth of nations would proceed from him is conferred by him on his son Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh. This way, the birthright that conferred a double portion of the paternal estate was given to Joseph. However, not all dimensions of the promises to Abraham would go to Joseph. Judah received a very important promise of great physical and spiritual dimension.

Through Jacob God prophesied in Genesis 49:10 “the scepter [ruler’s staff] shall not depart from Judah.” That prophecy pointed to the dynasty of Israel’s future king David, a descendent of Judah, and also to Jesus, a descendent of Judah and king David as the Messiah, and ruler of the earth as King of Kings.

1 Chronicles 5:2 clarifies these two promises: “…Judah prevailed above his brethren, and of him came the chief ruler; but the birthright was Joseph's.” Thus, the birthright promise of great material blessings and to become a great nation and a company or Commonwealth of Nations went to the descendants of Joseph, but the promise of rulership went to the descendants of Judah.

*Details of Promises to Joseph and Judah*

When Jacob was close to death, he called his twelve sons together and prophesied what would happen to descendants of each of them in the last days, meaning our time. These blessings provide more details on the birthright promise to Joseph.

Genesis 49:1 states: “1 And Jacob called his sons and said, "Gather together, that I may tell you what shall befall you in the last days.” Then Genesis 49:22-26 (*New Century Version*) states: “22 "Joseph is like a grapevine that produces much fruit, a healthy vine watered by a spring, whose branches grow over the wall. 23 Archers attack him violently and shoot at him angrily, 24 but he aims his bow well. His arms are made strong, and his strength from the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel. 25 Your father's God helps you. God Almighty blesses you. He blesses you with rain from above, with water from springs below, with many babies born to your wives, and many young ones born to your animals. 26 The blessings of your father are greater than the blessings of the oldest mountains, greater than the good things of the long-lasting hills. May these blessings rest on the head of Joseph, on the forehead of the one who was separated from his brothers!”

These prophetic blessings pronounced on Joseph's descendants "in the last days" mean that they will live in a very fertile, well-watered highly fruitful land. They will be a people “whose branches run over the wall” means they will expand their territory by being a colonizing people. At times they will be attacked by their enemies, but they will remain strong and victorious through God’s miraculous intervention and help.

Their population will continue to grow steadily, enjoying blessings of great herds of livestock, bumper crops due to climate favorable for agriculture, and extensive mineral resources to support a robust economy. They will receive these blessings "in the last days," meaning in our time.

God’s promise of the scepter [or kingship] to Judah would be fulfilled through the descendants of King David. After David planned to build a temple for God, He made a covenant with David which provides details of the promise of that kingship as stated in 2 Samuel 7:12-16 (NKJV): “"When your days are fulfilled and you rest with your fathers, I will set up your seed after you, who will come from your body, and I will establish his kingdom. He shall build a house for My name [which was fulfilled by David’s son King Solomon], and I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever. I will be his Father, and he shall be My son. If he commits iniquity, I will chasten him with the rod of men and with the blows of the sons of men. But My mercy shall not depart from him, as I took it from Saul, whom I removed from before you. And your house and your kingdom shall be established forever before you. Your throne shall be established forever." Here God promised David that his dynasty would last forever.

*Summary of God’s Promises to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob*

God’s promises to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Judah and King David can now be listed as follows:

1) God promised incredible material blessings of resources of the earth and riches to all of Jacob’s descendants, but primarily to Joseph’s sons Ephraim from whom would come the company or commonwealth of nations and to Manasseh from whom would come the single great nation. These blessing would be theirs in the last days, or our time.

2) Descendants of Jacob would possess the gates of their enemies.

3) All nations would be blessed materially and spiritually through the descendants of Jacob.

4) The chief ruler would come from Judah through king David, with an everlasting dynasty.

*Fulfillment of the Promises*

All these promises of God to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob were major prophecies. To see how all these incredible promises have been fulfilled, we must first identify who the modern descendants of Jacob are. Fortunately, various Church of God organizations have published excellent books and booklets on the subject. For comprehensive proof that white Americans are mainly the modern descendants of Manasseh the son of Joseph, the son of Jacob or Israel, and the British are the modern descendants of Manasseh’s brother Ephraim the reader may refer to the following five booklets:

1. *The United States and Britain in Prophecy*; by Herbert W. Armstrong, available from the Philadelphia Church of God at www.pcog.org.

2. *The United States and Britain in Bible Prophecy*; published by the United Church of God, available at www.ucg.org.

3. *The Throne of Britain: Its Biblical Origin and Future,* eBook published by the United Church of God, available at its web site www.ucg.org under booklets.

4. *America and Britain in Prophecy*, by David C. Pack; published by the Restored Church of God, available at www.rcg.org.

5. *The United States and Great Britain in Prophecy*; published by the Living Church of God, available at www.lcg.org.

For detailed proof of where the other tribes of Israel are settled, the best source is “*America and Britain in Prophecy*” by David Pack. From his book, here is where the modern descendants of the other tribes of Israel can mainly be found:

Reuben – France

Simeon and Levi – Prophesied to be dispersed among all the tribes of Israel. Largest portion of Levi or the priestly tribe lives among the Jews.

Judah – The Jews worldwide, with a branch in Ireland.

Zebulun – Holland

Issachar – Finland

Dan – Primarily Ireland and Denmark

Gad – Switzerland

Asher – Belgium

Naphtali – Sweden

Benjamin – Norway, Iceland and among the Jews

Here is how God’s promises to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob have been fulfilled in the American, British and Jewish people.

1) God promised incredible material blessings of resources of the earth and riches. This promise has been fulfilled in the descendants of Jacob in our time which are the people of the USA, British Commonwealth Nations, France, Switzerland, Ireland, Scandinavia, the Benelux countries and the Jews.

2) The nations of the earth would be blessed through them both materially and spiritually. The world has indeed been materially blessed through them by trading with them, and the British have been the engine of the world’s economy in the 19th and the Americans in the 20th century. The French too made significant contributions.

The world has also been spiritually blessed through them because the Savior Jesus Christ was a descendant of Judah, the son of Jacob. In addition, the knowledge of the true God has been preserved through them and propagated by the British and the Americans translating the Bible in virtually every language on earth and making it available to the world at low cost.

3) God also promised to bless those who bless them and seek their welfare, and curse those who curse them and seek their destruction. When the catastrophes that are soon to engulf the entire world are all over, we will see that this promise will have been fulfilled, and we will continue to see its fulfillment throughout God’s Kingdom into eternity.

4) The patriarchs were promised that their descendants would multiply as the stars and the sand on the seashore in number. They already number more than 500 million today. But true fulfillment of this prophecy will go on throughout eternity.

5) The promises included the land where the patriarchs roamed. The Jews today possess that land. But the true fulfillment of this prophecy will be in God’s Kingdom when descendants of Jacob will possess all the land between the Nile and the Euphrates rivers, as promised in Genesis 15:18. Eventually Israelites will fill much of the world with fruit, meaning with their population (Isaiah 27:6, “6 He [God] shall cause them that come of Jacob to take root: Israel shall blossom and bud, and fill the face of the world with fruit.”)

6) In Genesis 17, when Abram was ninety-nine years old the Lord changed his name to Abraham and promised that he would become the father of many nations and of kings. Today, the Israelite nations, the Jews, the Arabs, the Turks and many other nations we may not fully know are all descendants of Abraham, including obviously all their royalty. This promise stands fulfilled.

7) Abraham’s promises were passed on to his son Isaac, who then passed on the promises to his son Jacob and not his brother Esau. Many more prophetic details were further added to the promises. Isaac pronounced the following blessing on Jacob in Genesis 27:28-29: “28 Therefore may God give you of the dew of heaven, of the fatness of the earth, and plenty of grain and wine. 29 Let peoples serve you, and nations bow down to you. Be master over your brethren, and let your mother's sons bow down to you.”

Here instead of merely the land of Canaan, the promise of land is expanded to include the fatness of the earth, meaning lands that are richest in agriculture and mineral resources of the earth. Just look at the lands possessed by the British, American, French, Scandinavian and Benelux peoples to see how this promise has been dramatically fulfilled. And nations of the world have bowed down to and served the British during their colonial empire.

8) Then Isaac also let Jacob know in Genesis 28:3(NRSV) that his descendants will become a company of peoples, meaning many nations. Later Jacob passed on these promises to his 12 sons. The company of peoples promise has been fulfilled in the nations descended from the 12 tribes of Israel in Europe, and the Jews worldwide.

9) When passing on these promises to his sons, Jacob singled out Joseph and his two sons Manasseh and Ephraim that they would become a great nation and a commonwealth of nations. Their descendants are the peoples of the USA and the British Commonwealth of nations. There has been no other single greatest nation on earth than America and the greatest Commonwealth of Nations than the British Commonwealth who have been closely allied ever before in the history of mankind.

Joseph was given the birthright of the firstborn which is a double portion of a father’s inheritance. Joseph’s two sons Manasseh and Ephraim actually became two tribes, each receiving their separate inheritance, thus obtaining a double portion of their father’s inheritance.

The birthright people were also promised they would be famous on earth and possess the richest resources of the earth. At the zenith of their power, the British and the American people constituted only 4% of the world’s population, but possessed about 70% of the world’s agricultural and mineral resources.

10) Then when Abraham was willing to offer his son Isaac as a sacrifice, God’s promises to him became unconditional. In Genesis 22:11-12, 15 -18 the additional promise that Abraham’s descendants would possess the gates, meaning narrow land and sea passages of access to enemies’ lands was added. This incredible promise has been fulfilled in the British and American peoples who at the zenith of their power have possessed almost every major gate and strategic island on land and sea such as the Suez and Panama canals, the Rock of Gibraltar, the Khyber Pass, Hong Kong, the islands of Malta, Mauritius, Sri Lanka, Singapore the Falklands Islands and virtually every other gate around the world. Outcome of the Second World War hinged on the possession of these strategic gates. Most of the world’s commerce also passes through these gates. Even the Strait of Bosporus has been possessed by the Turks, the descendants of Esau, the son of Isaac, the son of Abraham.

11) In prophesying the future of Joseph’s descendants, Jacob stated in Genesis 49:22:

“22 Joseph is like a grapevine that produces much fruit, a healthy vine watered by a spring, whose branches grow over the wall.” A people "whose branches grow over the wall," or beyond their original borders, certainly means that they will be a colonizing people. here have never been such a colonizing people in the history of man as the British and American peoples. Thus, this prophecy stands fulfilled about 3,500 years after it was given.

12) And finally, the promise of the scepter, meaning the chief ruler would come from Judah through King David, with an everlasting dynasty. Today, Queen Elizabeth II of Britain sits on that throne in unbroken dynasty from King David. In God’s kingdom, Jesus Christ, also a descendant of King David, will be the chief ruler over the earth, occupying that throne for eternity. What an incredible way for God to fulfill His promise and continue to have this prophecy come true throughout eternity?

From the founding of ancient Israel as a nation after the Exodus from Egypt around 1443 BCE till God began to bestow His blessings on Israel around 1800 A.D. there has been a time gap of more than 3,240 years. God gave many detailed and incredibly intricate prophecies to chart the future course of Israel and Judah after coming out of Egypt till these prophecies would be fulfilled in these ‘last days’. It makes for a story more thrilling than fiction and shows God’s Almighty power to fulfill all the prophecies over a period of more than 3,000 years.

A people can fulfill one or two prophecies by mere coincidence, but when a people fulfill hundreds of prophecies, then probabilistically we can be absolutely certain of the identity of those people as the one whom the prophecies were written about. If Britain and America fulfill hundreds of prophecies about Ephraim and Manasseh and Israel, then there can be no doubt in our minds that they are in fact the descendants of those patriarchs. We will look at these intricate prophecies next.

**CHAPTER 10**

**PROPHECIES FULFILLED BY THE AMERICAN AND BRITISH PEOPLES**

From the time Israelites came out of Egypt till the ‘last days’ God gave incredibly intricate prophecies which the House of Israel would fulfill along the way for over more than 3,000 years. When blessing Joseph’s sons, Jacob said in Genesis 48:16, “The Angel which redeemed me from all evil, bless the lads; and let my name be named on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; and let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth.” Jacob’s other name was Israel. So, most of the prophecies concerning Israel apply to the British and American peoples.

Here is a brief description of only some of the incredible prophecies fulfilled by the British and American peoples:

***1) The Northern Kingdom (House of Israel) would be lost from world view***

After the reign of David’s son Solomon, the Kingdom of Israel was divided into two kingdoms. The northern Kingdom was known as the House of Israel and the southern Kingdom as the House of Judah. The descendants of the House of Judah are still known as the Jews today. But the identity of the descendants of the northern Kingdom was not known. They became known to history as the ‘lost ten tribes.’

The reason was that in Exodus 31:12-17 God instructed Moses that His Sabbaths were to be a sign between Him and Israel forever. A sign is something that identifies. The Sabbath is a perpetual reminder of God as the Creator and who His people are. As long as Israel kept the Sabbath, they maintained their identity. That is why the Jews have maintained their identity as “God’s people” throughout their history. But king Jeroboam of the northern Kingdom of Israel abandoned God’s Sabbaths. When they lost the identifying sign, they became lost to history as God’s people.

The other prophecies indicating that the House of Israel would lose its identity are:

Deuteronomy 32:26 where God warned Israelites through Moses: “…I would make the remembrance of them to cease from among men.”

Isaiah 8:17 says: “And I will wait upon the Lord, that hides His face from the House of Jacob [whose other name was Israel].”

**2) *House of Israel would lose its language, which was Hebrew***

This was prophesied in Isaiah 28:11 where God says He will speak to this people of Israel “11 …with…another tongue.” They now speak English, French, Dutch and the other north European languages.

**3) *House of Israel would lose its national name***

Isaiah 62:2 states: “2…You shall be called by a new name, which the mouth of the Lord will name.” This prophecy has already been fulfilled because the Israelites are known by different names today such as the British, Americans, French, Swiss, Dutch, Scandinavians, Belgians etc. The Jews are still known as Jews today.

**4) *Birthright blessings of national prosperity would be withheld 2,520 Years***

After Abraham was willing to sacrifice his son Isaac, the blessings on his descendants had become unconditional promises from God.

When Israel came out of Egypt, God through Moses told them that there were conditions to receiving His blessings. In Genesis 17:1-2 God told Abraham to walk before Him and become blameless and He would confirm His covenant with Him. When Abraham walked blameless, God did confirm His agreement with him. Similarly, for Israel to receive the promised blessings, the conditions were laid down in Leviticus 26, and also the consequences if they did not fulfill the conditions.

Leviticus 26:3-12 states: “3 'If you walk in My statutes and keep My commandments, and perform them, 4 then I will give you rain in its season, the land shall yield its produce, and the trees of the field shall yield their fruit. 5 Your threshing shall last till the time of vintage, and the vintage shall last till the time of sowing; you shall eat your bread to the full, and dwell in your land safely. 6 I will give peace in the land, and you shall lie down, and none will make you afraid; I will rid the land of evil beasts, and the sword will not go through your land. 7 You will chase your enemies, and they shall fall by the sword before you. 8 Five of you shall chase a hundred, and a hundred of you shall put ten thousand to flight; your enemies shall fall by the sword before you. 9 'For I will look on you favorably and make you fruitful, multiply you and confirm My covenant with you. 10 You shall eat the old harvest and clear out the old because of the new. 11 I will set My tabernacle among you, and My soul shall not abhor you. 12 I will walk among you and be your God, and you shall be My people.”

The conditions God laid down for Israel to be blessed were to keep God’s commandments and statutes, which is what Abraham was required to do to have the agreement with God confirmed. However, if Israel failed to fulfill the conditions to receive the blessings, curses would follow. The curses are stated in the rest of Leviticus 26. God continues from verse 14 onwards:

“14 'But if you do not obey Me, and do not observe all these commandments, 15 and if you despise My statutes, or if your soul abhors My judgments, so that you do not perform all My commandments, but break My covenant, 16 I also will do this to you: I will even appoint terror over you, wasting disease and fever which shall consume the eyes and cause sorrow of heart. And you shall sow your seed in vain, for your enemies shall eat it. 17 I will set My face against you, and you shall be defeated by your enemies. Those who hate you shall reign over you, and you shall flee when no one pursues you.”

The history of ancient Israel after it became established as a nation shows that she refused to keep God’s commandments. The nation did not receive God’s blessings but was cursed with terrorism and fighting with all the surrounding nations. Ancient Israelites even rejected God as her king and asked for a human king to be set up over them by Samuel the prophet. When their human king David obeyed God, Israel greatly prospered, and even in the early days of King Solomon when he obeyed God. But 1 Kings 11:1-4 says King Solomon loved many strange wives, marrying seven hundred and keeping 300 others as mistresses, and when he was old, they turned his heart towards other gods so that his heart was not perfect with the God of his fathers. Such disobedience kept Israel from continuing to receive God’s material blessings.

Things became progressively worse with Israel and Judah for refusing to keep God’s commandments. God sent prophets to warn the nations, but they refused to repent. Therefore, God could not confer the blessings He promised to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. However, the blessings to Abraham were promised unconditionally. God would then fulfill the prophecy given through Jacob to confer the unconditional blessings promised in the last days, meaning in our time. In doing so a further incredible prophecy had to be fulfilled that is stated in Leviticus 26:18, “18'And after all this, if you do not obey Me, then I will punish you seven times more for your sins.”

In prophecy, a time refers to one year. So, seven times would be seven years. With 360 days in a year, seven years then would equal 2,520 days. But another principle of prophecy is a day being equivalent to one year in fulfillment of prophecy, as given in Numbers 13 and 14 when ancient Israelites were punished for forty years from entering the Promised Land, for the forty days they went and spied out the Promised Land, but refused to go in and possess it. Thus, seven years or 2,520 days of punishment of withholding the unconditional birthright blessings would in prophecy equal 2,520 years.

The ten-tribe northern kingdom of Israel did not repent throughout the period of their kingdom at the preaching of the prophets. God then carried out His prophecy of punishing them by withholding the birthright blessings for 2,520 years. The ten tribes were carried into captivity by the Assyrians in 722-721 B.C. Then 2,520 years after that would bring us to the year 1800-1801 A.D. When the seven times duration or 2,520 years of punishment of withholding the birthright ended in 1800-1801 A.D., God began to confer the unconditionally promised blessings on the descendants of Joseph, USA and British Commonwealth nations as well as the nations of northwestern Europe. That is when Britain began building its empire and America burst forth into national greatness.

**5) *Prophecies concerning David’s Throne***

The story of how God kept His promise to David that his dynasty will continue unbroken till the return of the Messiah is an incredibly fascinating one. These prophecies are explained in detail in Mr. Herbert W. Armstrong’s book “*United States and Britain in Prophecy*.” Here is a synopsis.

*i) Descendants of David to rule over the House of Israel not Judah*

After the reign of David’s son Solomon over Israel, David’s descendants ruled over only the House of Judah (the Jews) and not the House of Israel till King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon carried Judah captive. But God prophesied in Jeremiah 33:14: "…thus says the Eternal: David shall never want a man to sit upon the throne of the House of Israel."

Descendants of David were prophesied to rule over the House of Israel and not the House of Judah, meaning the Jews. After Judah’s captivity, David’s descendants have never ruled as kings over the Jews, but have ruled over descendants of the House of Israel, in Britain.

ii) *Prophet Jeremiah transplants David’s Throne*

Jeremiah’s commission from God is stated in Jeremiah 1:10 (NKJV), “10 See, I have this day set you over the nations and over the kingdoms, To ROOT OUT and to pull down, To destroy and to throw down, To BUILD AND TO PLANT."

Jeremiah prophesied about the end of Judah’s kingdom during the reign of the last kings of Judah. He was thus used to “root out” David’s throne from the House of Judah and to BUILD and to PLANT it in the Kingdom of the House of Israel. And that throne had to be planted within a generation according to God’s promise to David, or in Jeremiah’s lifetime.

After most of Judah was carried captive to Babylon, the remnant of Judah decided to go to Egypt for protection even though Jeremiah warned them not to do so. This is recorded in Jeremiah 43:5-7 “[And so Johanan] “took all the remnant of Judah…even men, and women, and children, **and the king’s daughters**…and Jeremiah the prophet, and Baruch the son of Neriah [Jeremiah’s scribe, or secretary]. So they came to the land of Egypt.”

Here we see that the only “remnant” left for Jeremiah’s mission of transplanting the throne of David was the king’s daughters. The fascinating story of how Jeremiah did this is told in Mr. Herbert W. Armstrong’s book “*United States and Britain in Prophecy*” and an electronic booklet titled “*The Throne of Britain: Its Biblical Origin and Future*” published by the United Church of God, available at its web site www.ucg.org under booklets.

Briefly the story is this. King David was a descendant of Judah’s son Pharez. But Pharez had a twin brother Zarah. When King Nebuchadnezzar had besieged Judah, a son of the king of the Zarah line of Judah who reigned in Ireland was visiting Jerusalem. This prince was acquainted with Tea-Tephi, one of King Zedekiah’s daughters. Shortly after the fall of Jerusalem he married her. From Egypt, Jeremiah took this royal party to Ireland where the prince ascended the throne of Ireland over a part of the descendants of Israel. Thus, a daughter of the Pharez line of Judah was grafted into the Zarah line of Judah in Ireland. This is how Jeremiah fulfilled the second part of his commission about David’s throne: TO BUILD AND TO PLANT.

iii) *Daughter to be used to transplant David’s Throne*

The fact that a daughter would be used to transplant David’s throne was also prophesied, in addition to many other detailed prophecies.

The truth of PLANTING and the REBUILDING of David’s throne was revealed in prophecy given in a “riddle and a parable” through the prophet Ezekiel.

First Ezekiel is told to speak a riddle, and then a parable. The riddle is found in Ezekiel 17 verses 3 to 10. Then beginning in verse 11, the Eternal explains its meaning. A great eagle came to Lebanon and took the highest branch of the cedar. This is explained to represent King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon who came to Jerusalem and took captive the king of Judah. The cropping off of the cedar’s young twigs and carrying them to a land of traffic is explained to picture the captivity of the king’s sons. “He took also of the seed of the land” means Nebuchadnezzar took also of the people, and the mighty of the land of Judah. He “set it as a willow tree. And it grew and became a spreading vine of low stature” means the Jews were given a covenant whereby, although they were ruled over by the Chaldeans, they might live in peace and grow.

The other “great eagle” is explained to represent Pharaoh of Egypt.

Thus, the riddle covers the first half of Jeremiah’s commission. Now notice what is revealed concerning the second part – the PLANTING of David’s throne! It comes in the parable, verses 22-24: “Thus says the Lord God; I will also take of the highest branch of the high cedar.” From God’s own explanation we have learned that the cedar tree represents the nation of Judah; its highest branch is Judah’s king. The riddle told us Nebuchadnezzar took the highest branch – the king. The parable now tells us God – not Nebuchadnezzar, but God – will take of the highest branch. Not the branch, but of the branch – of Zedekiah’s children. But Nebuchadnezzar took, and killed, all his sons.

God, through his prophet Jeremiah, is now going to take of this highest branch and “SET IT (verse 22). “I will crop off from the top of his young twigs A TENDER ONE, and will plant it upon an high mountain and eminent,” continues the Almighty. The twigs of this highest branch represent the children of King Zedekiah! Certainly a young tender twig, then, represents a DAUGHTER!”…and will PLANT it.” Symbolic language could not be more plainer in saying that this young Jewish princess is to become the royal seed for PLANTING again of David’s throne? Where? “…upon an high mountain and eminent,” says the Eternal! A “mountain” in symbol always represents a NATION.

“In the mountain of the height of Israel will I plant it,” answers the Eternal. David’s throne now is to be planted in Israel, after being thrown down from Judah. After this Hebrew princess is “planted” on the throne, now in Israel, lost from view – that throne is to BEAR FRUIT. She is to marry, have children, and her sons are to continue David’s dynasty!

Israel had already been independent in Ireland for four centuries. Israel in Ireland already had a kingly line onto which Zedekiah’s daughter was grafted. The Irish Israelites were an ancient colony and had not gone into Assyrian captivity.

iv) *Healing of ‘breach’ between the Pharez and Zarah*

The Bible mentions a mysterious ‘breach’ that occurred in the days of Judah (Genesis 38:28-30).

Judah was the father of twin sons. The firstborn was royal seed, for through him the scepter promise was to be carried down. It seems the midwife knew twins were about to be born. It is recorded that just before birth one of the twins ‘put out his hand: and the midwife took and bound upon his hand a scarlet thread, saying, ‘This came out first’. But the child drew back his hand and the other was actually born first.”

The midwife exclaimed, “How have you broken forth? This breach be upon you: Therefore his name was called Pharez,” meaning “breach”. The other twin was named Zarah.

This strange occurrence was recorded in Bible history because this breach was to be healed between the sons or their descendants at some future time?

History shows the descendants of Zarah became wanderers, later migrating to Ireland. But meanwhile, the Pharez-David-Zedekiah line possessed the scepter (rulership) – was HIGH – exalted. The Zarah line, feeling it rightfully should possess the scepter, and some day would, was low, abased – so far as royal power was concerned.

Now consider another prophecy given in Ezekiel 21:25-26 (KJV) “And you, profane wicked prince of Israel [Zedekiah], whose day is come, when iniquity shall have an end, thus says the Lord God; remove the diadem, and take off the crown [from Judah, as did happen, through the first half of Jeremiah’s commission]; this [the crown] shall not be the same: ***exalt him that is low, and abase him that is high***.”

“Remove the diadem, and take off the crown,” means that the crown was removed from king Zedekiah of David’s dynasty. “This shall not be the same,” means that the diadem is not to cease, but a change is to take place. “Exalt him that is low, and abase him that is high,” means that King Zedekiah of Judah, who is high is to be abased. He is to lose that crown. House of Judah has been “high” while the House of Israel has been “low” – these many years without a king (Hosea 3:4). The Pharez line has been “high”; the Zarah line “low.”

This prophecy thus points to the breach between the Pharez and Zarah lines of the Jews (descendants of Judah) being healed with the Zarah line possessing the scepter over the House of Israel through marriage with the Pharez line.

v) *David’s throne was prophesied to be overturned three times*

Ezekiel the prophet continues his prophecy of Ezekiel 21 in verse 27: “I will overturn, overturn, overturn it: and it shall be no more [overturned], until he come whose right it is; and I will give it him.” The diadem and the throne were to be overturned. Not once, but three times. It was to be overturned by abasing Zedekiah, the house of Judah and the Pharez line, and exalting the house of Israel, and one of the Zarah line! The first of the three overturns was performed as the first half of Jeremiah’s commission, by rooting out the throne of David from Jerusalem.

“And it shall be no more, until he come whose right it is; and I will give it him,” means that the throne would be no more overturned after the third overturn, and will be given to Jesus Christ, whose it is by right.

The prince and husband of the Jewish princess Tea-tephi ascended the throne of his father. The son of this king and the Jewish Princess continued on the throne of Ireland and this same dynasty continued unbroken through all the kings of Ireland. It was then overturned the second time and transplanted in Scotland, from where it was overturned the third time and moved to London, England, where this same dynasty continues today in the reign of Queen Elizabeth II. Thus, the three overturns of the throne prophesied in Ezekiel 21:25-27 have been fulfilled.

vi) *Ephraim settled exactly where prophesied to settle*

If God kept His promise to David, the throne of David was to be planted ‘in the mountain of the height of Israel’ (Ezekiel 17:22-23: “I will crop off from the top of his young twigs a tender one, and will plant it upon an high mountain and eminent: 23 In the mountain of the height of Israel will I plant it). We should find it in the leading nation of the descendants of Ephraim, the birthright holders.

The precise location where Ephraim was to settle was also prophesied in the Bible.

The prophet Amos wrote in Amos 9:8-9 “Behold, the eyes of the Lord God are upon the sinful kingdom [house of Israel – Judah had not yet sinned], and I will destroy it [the kingdom, or government, not the people] from off the face of the earth…For, lo, I will command, and I will sift the house of Israel among all nations, like as corn is sifted in a sieve, yet shall not the least grain fall upon the earth.”

This prophecy says that the ten-tribe House of Israel (not Judah) was to be sifted among the nations, losing their identity. It was during this time that the children of the House of Israel were to “abide many days without a king” (Hosea 3:4). Although many of them were still scattered among various nations in the first century A.D., a portion of them had become established in a definite location of their own by Jeremiah’s time – 140 years after their original captivity.

In prophecy, the holders of the birthright are distinguished from Judah (the Jews) by various names: “Ephraim,” “Joseph,” “Jacob,” “Rachel” (Joseph’s mother), “Samaria” (their former capital), “Israel.”

According to Hosea 12:1: “Ephraim…follows after the east wind.” An “east wind” travels west. Ephraim must have gone west from ancient Assyria to an area that is due west of Jerusalem. When the Eternal swore to David that He would perpetuate his throne, He said: “I will set his hand [scepter] also in the sea” (Psalm 89:25). The throne is to be “set” or planted “in the sea.”

Through Jeremiah the Eternal said: “Backsliding Israel has justified herself more than treacherous Judah. Go and proclaim these words toward the north, and say, Return you backsliding Israel, says the Lord” (Jeremiah 3:11-12). Thus, in these last days, messengers are to go “toward the NORTH (of Jerusalem where Jeremiah prophesied) in order to locate lost Israel and proclaim the warning message. So, the location, we now find, is toward the north, also west, and in the sea.

In Jeremiah 31:10, the message is to be declared “in the isles afar off” and is to be shouted in “the CHIEF OF THE NATIONS” (verse 7). Thus, finally, today, as in Jeremiah’s day, the house of Israel is in the isles, which are “in the sea,” the chief of the nations, northwest of Jerusalem, a coast-dwelling, and, therefore sea-dominant people. Certainly, there can be no mistaking that identity.

Take a map of Europe. Draw a line due NORTHWEST of Jerusalem across the continent of Europe, until you come to the sea, and then to the islands in the sea! This line takes you directly to the British Isles! These prophecies show us where the prominent nation from the northern ten tribes can be located in our days.

For fascinating and much more thrilling than fiction details on Jeremiah’s “planting” and the present location of “lost” Israel and David’s throne, please read the United Church of God eBooklet titled “*The Throne of Britain: Its Biblical Origin and Future*” and Mr. Armstrong book *"The United States and Britain in Prophecy"*.

***6) Prophecies concerning wanderings of the House of Israel***

i) *Tribe of Dan prophesied to leave clues about wanderings of the House of Israel*

The Israelites were prophesied to leave highway signs or waymarks along the trail they traveled from the land of ancient Israel after being deported by the Assyrians. Speaking about Ephraim, the ancestor of the British people, God through the prophet Jeremiah says in Jeremiah 31:20-21: “20 Is Ephraim My dear son? Is he a pleasant child? For though I spoke against him, I earnestly remember him still; therefore, My heart yearns for him; I will surely have mercy on him, says the Lord. 21 "Set up signposts, make landmarks; set your heart toward the highway, the way in which you went.”

In Genesis 49:17, the patriarch Jacob blessing his sons prophesied what would befall them. He said about his son Dan: “Dan shall be a serpent by the way.” Another translation of the original Hebrew can also be “Dan shall be a serpent’s trail.” It is a very significant fact that the tribe of Dan named every place they went after their father Dan. It started way back when they had just settled in their land. Joshua 19:47 records:

“…the children of Dan went up to fight against Leshem, and took it…and called Leshem, Dan, after the name of Dan their father.”

Judges 18:11-12 records that the Danites took Kirjath-jearim and “called that place Mahaneh-dan unto this day.” Then the same company of 600 armed Danites captured Laish and “called the name of the city DAN, after the name of Dan their father (verse 29). This shows how the Danites left their “serpent’s trail” by the way as signposts by which they can be traced.

In Hebrew the vowels are not preserved. So, for Dan, if we leave the vowel a out, the Danites could be identified with names that could be spelled as “Dn”, meaning Den, Din, Don, or Dun in addition to Dan.

During the time of ancient Israel, the tribe of Dan occupied two different areas in the Holy Land. One part lived on the seacoast, and the other colony occupied the northernmost area. That is why Israel’s boundary is listed in the Bible as from Dan to Beersheba.

When the Assyrians defeated Israel, the seacoast Danites sailed away in their ships to Ireland. Irish history shows that the new settlers in Ireland were the “Tuatha de Dananns”, which translates to “Tribe of Dan.” They left their sign posts in names such as Dans-Laugh, Dan-Sower, Dun-dalk, Dun-drum, Don-egal Bay, Don-egal City, Dun-gloe, Din-gle and Dunsmor.

The northern colony of Danites, however, was captured by the Assyrians along with the other nine tribes. They settled and later traveled from the land just west of the Black Sea and northwest of the Caspian Sea. They left their “serpent’s trail” in names of rivers such as the Danube, Dneiper, Dniester and the Don in Europe. From there they migrated further west, finally settling in Denmark, which means “Dan’s mark.” So, the tribe of Dan has left a “serpent’s trail” as prophesied by Dan’s father Jacob, in his blessing of Dan. This enables us to piece together the wanderings of the northern ten tribes of Israel after their captivity and deportation at the hands of the Assyrians.

ii) *Part of Israel were to take their name from Isaac, the father of Israel*

God promised that Isaac, the son of Abraham and Sarah, would leave the track of his name on history. Genesis 21:12 states: "In Isaac your seed shall be called." Ancient written Hebrew didn't include vowels, so the written letters for Isaac were the SC or SK sound.

After the Assyrian captivity, those Israelites migrating north around the Black Sea to Europe were called Scythians. Initially, the eastern branch between Persia and China were called the Sakka or Saka. Later in Europe they became Sacesones (sons of Saka) and finally Saxons —settling in England and later America. The SK/SC sound is found yet today among descendant nations of some of the tribes: Scotland, Scotia, Scandinavia, etc.

***All Nations should Ponder these Promises***

The God of the Bible has demonstrated through these incredible prophecies and promises to one man and his descendants that He is the Almighty God who has total and complete control over everything in the universe because He has created it all. And the very reason He gave these astounding material and physical promises and fulfilled them is that you may have evidence of His almighty power so that you may believe the promises of salvation He offers. In contrast, the gods of other religions have not backed up their promises of salvation by a demonstration of their power. They have not proved to us that they are the Almighty. They have not foretold of any great events they would do in the affairs of mankind and demonstrated their Almighty power by fulfilling them exactly as they foretold.

But the God of the Bible has amply demonstrated that He is indeed the Almighty and has full and total control over the affairs of man. He has kept His promises to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Judah and King David over thousands of years and is still keeping them today. He has performed all this unconditionally for Israel so that you may believe his promises of universal prosperity to all nations in His soon coming Kingdom on earth; and His equally incredible promise of eternal life to each and every human being on earth as His own literal son or daughter.

With fulfillment of these incredible promises and prophecies, compared to the God of the Bible, the gods of Islam, Hinduism and other world’s religions stand proved as charlatans, deceivers and counterfeiters who have inspired scriptures which contain philosophies and cunningly crafted lies as offers of salvation which are destructive to human well-being, designed to lead them away from the true God.

Now some may argue that gods of the various religions help their people. Hence it is natural for the God of the Bible to help Christian nations, or the British, American and Jewish peoples. In the past the Allah of Islam helped built the great Islamic empires of the past. Before that the gods of the Egyptians, Assyrians, Babylonians, Persians, and Greeks helped them.

But, the gods of these peoples did not demonstrate they are the Almighty because they did not foretell their peoples’ rise to power. The God of the Bible on the other hand debunks this notion altogether because He foretold these nations’ rise to power centuries before it happened and brought it to pass exactly as He foretold. Thus, He demonstrated that He is the supreme God over all the earth.

We will examine these prophecies next.

***Rise of Arab and Ottoman Empires Prophesied***

Islamists should also know that the rise of the Arabs as a great nation, and then the Turks as a great empire have also been prophesied in the Bible.

The Arabs are the descendants of Ishmael the son of Abraham. God in His blessings on Ishmael stated in Genesis 17:20 (NKJV): “20 And as for Ishmael, I have heard you [Abraham]. Behold, I have blessed him, and will make him fruitful, and will multiply him exceedingly. He shall beget twelve princes, and I will make him a great nation.”

The promise to Ishmael is repeated through his mother Hagar in Genesis 21:17-17 (NKJV), “17 And God heard the voice of the lad [Ishmael]. Then the angel of God called to Hagar out of heaven, and said to her, "What ails you, Hagar? Fear not, for God has heard the voice of the lad where he is. 18 Arise, lift up the lad and hold him with your hand, for I will make him a great nation."

The descendants of Ishmael never became a great nation until the Islamic Empire founded by Mohammad. After the successors of Mohammad, the Umayyad Caliphate ruled from 661 – 750 A.D which was followed by the Abbasid Caliphate which ruled from 750 A.D till 1258 A.D.

At the time of the Abbasids, Europe lay in the Dark Ages while the torch of civilization in the form of preserving literature and scientific learning in mathematics, chemistry, physics, medicine, geography and astronomy was kept burning by Islam. Thus, God fulfilled His promise to Ishmael to make him a great nation, the greatest on earth during the zenith of its power.

The Turks are descendants of Isaac’s son Esau or Edom. They too became a great nation during the time of the Ottoman Empire. Their dominion was also prophesied in the Bible.

Genesis 27:39-41 states, “39 And Isaac his father answered and said unto him, Behold, your dwelling shall be [other translations add ‘away from’ here] the fatness of the earth, and of the dew of heaven from above; 40 And by your sword shall you live, and shall serve your brother [Jacob]; and it shall come to pass when you shall have the dominion that you shall break his yoke from off your neck.”

Thus, the descendants of Esau were also to have dominion or rule, but they were not to be the ‘great nation’ of their time. The Ottoman Empire has not been the greatest Empire of its time whereas the Arab empire of the descendants of Ishmael was. But the Ottoman Empire was a great Empire. They did have dominion as prophesied in God’s promise to Esau.

Though the Koran never prophesied the greatness of the Islamic Empires, the Bible did prophesy the rise of the Islamic Empires in the blessings to the original ancestors of the nations.

Next, we will examine the prophecies concerning the rise of the world’s great empires.

**CHAPTER 11**

**GOD OF THE UNIVERSE**

Some may hold to the notion that different people have their own gods whom they worship who help them. But this issue was addressed in the very beginning. We simply cannot have different gods all working on the same earth to help their worshippers against worshippers of other gods to make them the chief people on earth. If this were true, the earth itself would be in chaos. However, the earth and the heavens continue in their finely tuned courses such that life is sustainable on earth. If anything was to change even slightly, the earth would become too hot or too cold making life impossible. So, the only conclusion we can reach is that there is only one supreme God who has created the entire universe and is in total and complete control of it.

To debunk the human idea that the gods of different peoples have control of different peoples, the God of the Bible plainly declares that He is in total control of the universe and in the affairs of man.

Speaking through Isaiah the prophet God challenges doubters to prove Him. He says in Isaiah 46:9-10 (NKJV): "For I am God, and there is no other; I am God, and there is none like Me, declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times things that are not yet done, saying, 'My counsel shall stand…"

God did tell the end from the very first prophecy in the Bible in the Garden of Eden in Genesis 3:15 when the serpent or Satan was cursed for deceiving humanity. God said: “15 And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her seed; it shall bruise your head, and you shalt bruise his heel.” Here God prophesied that He would send the Savior to defeat Satan and redeem mankind from death.

God Himself says in Isaiah 46 that prophecy is a proof of the true God. The gods of all other religions are mere idols, incapable of predicting the future and bringing it to pass. The God of the Bible throws the gods of all other religions a challenge through Isaiah the prophet in Isaiah 41:22-23 (*Revised English Bible*): "Let these idols come forward and foretell the future for us. Let them declare the meaning of these past events that we may reflect on it; let them predict the future to us that we may know what it holds. Declare what is yet to happen; then we shall know you are gods."

After God dealt with Israel and she proved unfaithful to Him for more than 850 years of dealings since the Exodus from Egypt, almost all of them ended up as captive slaves. But God then began to deal with Gentile nations through His prophets to show that He has control over all of them and all of humanity and sets up rulers or brings down whomever He wishes. This was made abundantly clear through Daniel the prophet to King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon.

***Prophecies about Major Empires on Earth***

A remarkable prophecy recorded by Daniel is his interpretation of Nebuchadnezzar's dream in chapter 2 of his book. In the second year of his reign the Babylonian king had a dream that troubled him greatly which none of his counselors, wise men, magicians or astrologers could explain. But Nebuchadnezzar was convinced that his dream was of great importance (Daniel 2:1-3).

The *Expositor's Bible Commentary*, Vol. 7, pp. 39, 46 says his dream gives us a "disclosure of God's plan for the ages till the final triumph of Christ" and "presents the foreordained succession of world powers that are to dominate the Near East till the final victory of the Messiah in the last days".

Daniel records the event in Chapter 2 of his book as follows (NKJV):

“1 Now in the second year of Nebuchadnezzar's reign, Nebuchadnezzar had dreams; and his spirit was so troubled that his sleep left him. 2 Then the king gave the command to call the magicians, the astrologers, the sorcerers, and the Chaldeans to tell the king his dreams. So they came and stood before the king. 3 And the king said to them, "I have had a dream, and my spirit is anxious to know the dream."

“4 Then the Chaldeans spoke to the king in Aramaic, "O king, live forever! Tell your servants the dream, and we will give the interpretation." 5 The king answered and said to the Chaldeans, "My decision is firm: if you do not make known the dream to me, and its interpretation, you shall be cut in pieces, and your houses shall be made an ash heap. 6 However, if you tell the dream and its interpretation, you shall receive from me gifts, rewards, and great honor. Therefore tell me the dream and its interpretation." 7 They answered again and said, "Let the king tell his servants the dream, and we will give its interpretation." 8 The king answered and said, "I know for certain that you would gain time, because you see that my decision is firm: 9 if you do not make known the dream to me, there is only one decree for you! For you have agreed to speak lying and corrupt words before me till the time has changed. Therefore, tell me the dream, and I shall know that you can give me its interpretation." 10The Chaldeans answered the king, and said, "There is not a man on earth who can tell the king's matter; therefore, no king, lord, or ruler has ever asked such things of any magician, astrologer, or Chaldean. 11 It is a difficult thing that the king requests, and there is no other who can tell it to the king except the gods, whose dwelling is not with flesh."

“12 For this reason the king was angry and very furious, and gave a command to destroy all the wise men of Babylon. 13 So the decree went out, and they began killing the wise men; and they sought Daniel and his companions, to kill them. 14 Then with counsel and wisdom Daniel answered Arioch, the captain of the king's guard, who had gone out to kill the wise men of Babylon; 15 he answered and said to Arioch the king's captain, "Why is the decree from the king so urgent?" Then Arioch made the decision known to Daniel. 16 So Daniel went in and asked the king to give him time, that he might tell the king the interpretation. 17 Then Daniel went to his house, and made the decision known to Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, his companions,18 that they might seek mercies from the God of heaven concerning this secret, so that Daniel and his companions might not perish with the rest of the wise men of Babylon. 19 Then the secret was revealed to Daniel in a night vision. So, Daniel blessed the God of heaven.”

After God had revealed the dream to Daniel, he was taken to the king by Arioch the King’s captain to explain the details of the dream: Daniel 2 continues in verse 27:

“27 Daniel answered in the presence of the king, and said…28…there is a God in heaven who reveals secrets, and He has made known to King Nebuchadnezzar what will be in the latter days. Your dream, and the visions of your head upon your bed, were these…31 "You, O king, were watching; and behold, a great image! This great image, whose splendor was excellent, stood before you; and its form was awesome. 32 This image's head was of fine gold, its chest and arms of silver, its belly and thighs of bronze, 33 its legs of iron, its feet partly of iron and partly of clay. 34 You watched while a stone was cut out without hands, which struck the image on its feet of iron and clay, and broke them in pieces. 35 Then the iron, the clay, the bronze, the silver, and the gold were crushed together, and became like chaff from the summer threshing floors; the wind carried them away so that no trace of them was found. And the stone that struck the image became a great mountain and filled the whole earth. 36 "This is the dream. Now we will tell the interpretation of it before the king.

“37 You, O king, are a king of kings. For the God of heaven has given you a kingdom, power, strength, and glory; 38 and wherever the children of men dwell, or the beasts of the field and the birds of the heaven, He has given them into your hand, and has made you ruler over them all--you are this head of gold. 39 But after you shall arise another kingdom inferior to yours; then another, a third kingdom of bronze, which shall rule over all the earth. 40 And the fourth kingdom shall be as strong as iron, inasmuch as iron breaks in pieces and shatters everything; and like iron that crushes, that kingdom will break in pieces and crush all the others.

“41 Whereas you saw the feet and toes, partly of potter's clay and partly of iron, the kingdom shall be divided; yet the strength of the iron shall be in it, just as you saw the iron mixed with ceramic clay. 42 And as the toes of the feet were partly of iron and partly of clay, so the kingdom shall be partly strong and partly fragile. 43 As you saw iron mixed with ceramic clay, they will mingle with the seed of men; but they will not adhere to one another, just as iron does not mix with clay. 44 And in the days of these kings the God of heaven will set up a kingdom which shall never be destroyed; and the kingdom shall not be left to other people; it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand forever. 45 Inasmuch as you saw that the stone was cut out of the mountain without hands, and that it broke in pieces the iron, the bronze, the clay, the silver, and the gold--the great God has made known to the king what will come to pass after this. The dream is certain, and its interpretation is sure."

Daniel told Nebuchadnezzar that his Babylonian Empire was represented by the head of gold (verses 37-38). The silver, bronze, and iron and clay parts of the image represented three powerful empires that would follow Babylon (verses 39-40).

Nebuchadnezzar’s dream occurred around 600 B.C. Daniel’s interpretation of the dream provided an astonishing preview of the great empires that would dominate history of the civilized world from the time of Nebuchadnezzar right down to the return of Jesus Christ to earth in our time. This was history of the next more than 2,600 years foretold in advance.

Daniel’s interpretation of the dream was that the Babylonian empire was to be followed by another empire, represented by the chest and arms of silver. Two arms of silver would represent the two divisions of the empire. History shows that the Babylonian empire was succeeded by the empire of the Medes and Persians founded by Cyrus the Great when he conquered Babylon in 539 BCE. Its two divisions were the Median and Persian arms of the empire. It ruled over all the territory of the Babylonian empire and more, and held sway in the Near and Middle East for about two centuries.

The Medo-Persian Empire was succeeded by the Greco-Macedonian Empire of Alexander the Great and his successors. It swallowed up all the territory of the Medo-Persian Empire and conquered more. It was represented by the belly and thighs of bronze in Nebuchadnezzar’s image. It lasted for about 265 to 300 years, until it was conquered by the Roman Empire. The belly represented the empire when it was united under Alexander and the thighs represented its two dominant divisions later, the northern division based in Syria, Babylonia and territory up to India (the Seleucids), and the southern division based in Egypt (the Ptolemies).

The Roman Empire that succeeded the Greco-Macedonian Empire was tough and ruthless as iron is tough. It ruled all the territory of the Greco-Macedonian Empire in the Middle East, and is represented by the legs of iron, and feet partly of iron and partly of clay in Nebuchadnezzar’s image. The two legs of the empire represented its two divisions with their capitals at Rome (the western leg) and Constantinople (the eastern leg).

The Roman Empire was crushed in 476 A.D. But Daniel’s prophecy mentioned in verse 44 that “…in the days of these kings the God of heaven will set up a kingdom which shall never be destroyed.” This part of the prophecy says that Jesus Christ will set up God’s kingdom in the days of the kings represented by the ten toes. This means that though the Roman Empire was crushed in 476 A.D., there would be later resurrections.

The details of these resurrections are provided in other prophecies revealed to Daniel. In fact, the Roman Empire is also represented by the fourth beast in the prophecy in Daniel 7 (NKJV) which states:

“1 In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon, Daniel had a dream and visions of his head while on his bed. Then he wrote down the dream, telling the main facts. 2 Daniel spoke, saying, "I saw in my vision by night, and behold, the four winds of heaven were stirring up the Great Sea. 3 And four great beasts came up from the sea, each different from the other. 4 The first was like a lion, and had eagle's wings. I watched till its wings were plucked off; and it was lifted up from the earth and made to stand on two feet like a man, and a man's heart was given to it.”

Students of prophecy have long understood from history the empires that these beasts represented. The lion represented the Babylonian empire, corresponding to the head of gold in Nebuchadnezzar’s image. The wings being plucked off and then lifted up from earth and made to stand on two feet like a man is talking about King Nebuchadnezzar’s ordeal mentioned in Daniel 4 when a beast’s heart was given to him and he ate grass like an ox for 7 years because he boasted that by his mighty power he had won the kingdom and made Babylon great.

Daniel continues: “5 And suddenly another beast, a second, like a bear. It was raised up on one side, and had three ribs in its mouth between its teeth. And they said thus to it: 'Arise, devour much flesh!'

The bear represented the Medo-Persian Empire, which in Nebuchadnezzar’s image was represented by the chest and arms of silver.

Daniel 7 continues: “6 After this I looked, and there was another, like a leopard, which had on its back four wings of a bird. The beast also had four heads, and dominion was given to it.”

The leopard represented the Greek Empire of Alexander and his successors, corresponding to the belly and thighs of bronze of Nebuchadnezzar’s image.

Then verse 7 continues: “7After this I saw in the night visions, and behold, a fourth beast, dreadful and terrible, exceedingly strong. It had huge iron teeth; it was devouring, breaking in pieces, and trampling the residue with its feet. It was different from all the beasts that were before it, and it had ten horns. 8 I was considering the horns, and there was another horn, a little one, coming up among them, before whom three of the first horns were plucked out by the roots. And there, in this horn, were eyes like the eyes of a man, and a mouth speaking pompous words. 9 "I watched till thrones were put in place, And the Ancient of Days was seated…11 "I watched then because of the sound of the pompous words which the horn was speaking; I watched till the beast was slain, and its body destroyed and given to the burning flame…13 "I was watching in the night visions, And behold, One like the Son of Man, Coming with the clouds of heaven! He came to the Ancient of Days, and they brought Him near before Him. 14 Then to Him was given dominion and glory and a kingdom that all peoples, nations, and languages should serve Him. His dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and His kingdom the one which shall not be destroyed. 15 "I, Daniel, was grieved in my spirit within my body, and the visions of my head troubled me.

“16 I came near to one of those who stood by, and asked him the truth of all this. So he told me and made known to me the interpretation of these things: 17 'Those great beasts, which are four, are four kings which arise out of the earth. 18 But the saints of the Most High shall receive the kingdom, and possess the kingdom forever, even forever and ever.' 19 Then I wished to know the truth about the fourth beast, which was different from all the others, exceedingly dreadful, with its teeth of iron and its nails of bronze, which devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled the residue with its feet; 20 and the ten horns that were on its head, and the other horn which came up, before which three fell, namely, that horn which had eyes and a mouth which spoke pompous words, whose appearance was greater than his fellows. 21 I was watching; and the same horn was making war against the saints, and prevailing against them, 22 until the Ancient of Days came, and a judgment was made in favor of the saints of the Most High, and the time came for the saints to possess the kingdom.

“23 "Thus he said: 'The fourth beast shall be a fourth kingdom on earth, which shall be different from all other kingdoms, and shall devour the whole earth, trample it and break it in pieces. 24 The ten horns are ten kings who shall arise from this kingdom. And another shall rise after them; He shall be different from the first ones, and shall subdue three kings. 25 He shall speak pompous words against the Most High, shall persecute the saints of the Most High, and shall intend to change times and law. Then the saints shall be given into his hand for a time and times and half a time. 26 'But the court shall be seated, and they shall take away his dominion, to consume and destroy it forever. 27 Then the kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the kingdoms under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people, the saints of the Most High. His kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and all dominions shall serve and obey Him.'28 "This is the end of the account…”

The ten horns of the fourth beast in this prophecy indicate that after the Roman Empire was destroyed in 476 A.D., there would be ten resurrections of the Empire right down to the return of Jesus Christ to earth. Then another little horn came up among the ten horns with a mouth speaking pompous words against the Most High, meaning God, before whom the first three horns were plucked up by the roots. Verse 25 says: 25 He shall speak pompous words against the Most High, Shall persecute the saints of the Most High, and shall intend to change times and law.”

A horn in prophecy represents a king or ruler, and one speaking against the Most High means it is a false religious power. There has been only one religious power in the territory of the Roman Empire whose head wears a crown, which has persecuted God’s true Church through the centuries, and has actually changed times and laws; and that is the head of the false Church based in Rome.

This false Church has persecuted God’s true Church through centuries, martyring hundreds of thousands. It has also changed times. It has given the world a different calendar from God’s calendar, the Gregorian calendar. It has changed the beginning of a day from sunset to the middle of the night, beginning of the year from spring to the dead of winter, the beginning of the week from Sunday to Monday. It has changed God’s laws, the Ten Commandments and holy days by doing away with the seventh day Sabbath, instead worshipping on Sunday, the day of sun worship of the pagans; deleting the second commandment that prohibits worshipping images or idols; doing away with God’s seven annual holy days and foisting pagan holidays such as Christmas and Easter dressed in Christian garb on Christianity. So history clearly points out who the prophesied little horn is!

Now notice how this little horn fulfilled Daniel’s prophecies.

The first three resurrections of the Roman Empire after 476 A.D. were those of the Vandals, the Heruli and the Ostrogoths. These three horns or kingdoms were uprooted at the behest of the pope (the little horn of Daniel 7:8) as prophesied in Daniel 7:8. The reason the pope encouraged rulers and generals to drive these kingdoms out of Rome was that they held beliefs different from those of the Roman Church. The word uprooted is also significant. These barbarian peoples were completely driven out of Rome. They were not allowed to take root in the Roman lands.

After the three successive kingdoms ended, the next seven resurrections would be called the Holy Roman Empire. The reason was that the pope of the Roman Church would crown the emperors of these kingdoms as holy Roman emperors and protectors of the False Church. In 554 A.D. Emperor Justinian began the first resurrection. This was followed by that of Charlemagne who was crowned Holy Roman Emperor in 800 A.D.

The 3rd resurrection was that of Otto the Great who was crowned in 962 A.D. The 4th resurrection was that of Charles V of the Hapsburg Dynasty, crowned Holy Roman Emperor in 1530 A.D. The 5th resurrection was that of Napoleon from 1804-1814 A.D., and the 6th resurrection occurred when Garibaldi united the little kingdoms in Italy by 1870 and then Mussolini signed a secret concordat with the pope and declared his rule as the Holy Roman Empire, including the African territories of Eritrea and Somaliland as parts of his kingdom. The Hitler-Mussolini Axis was part of the sixth resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire.

The seventh and final resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire, which is also the 10th resurrection of the Roman Empire [the Vandals, the Heruli and the Ostrogoths being the first three], is yet in the near future and is represented by the tenth horn of Daniel’s fourth beast and feet and ten toes of Nebuchadnezzar’s image. This indicates an alliance of ten rulers. In the days of these kings Jesus Christ will return, smash this kingdom and set up God’s kingdom which shall never be destroyed, as indicated by the words in Nebuchadnezzar’s dream, and also in Daniel 7:13-14, 26-27.

Further prophecies in Daniel 8:1-21 provide more details about these empires and identify the Medo-Persian and Greek empires by name.

Thus, we see that God prophesied the succession of great empires ruling the Near and Middle East, and brought it to pass exactly as prophesied. The odds of any human being foreseeing these events on his own and predicting them correctly defy reason. Daniel said: “…There is a God in heaven who reveals secrets, and He has made known to King Nebuchadnezzar what will be in the latter days” (Daniel 2:28).

We living today will soon be witnesses to the fulfillment of this prophecy when ten rulers will unite in Europe to set up the tenth resurrection of the Roman Empire, which is the seventh resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire. It calls itself the Holy Roman Empire because the great false Roman Church will be involved in its resurrection.

***New Testament Prophecies Already Fulfilled***

Just as many of the prophecies written by Daniel have already been fulfilled, the prophecies written by John the apostle in the Book of Revelation have already been fulfilled. The two prophetic books complement each other.

When Daniel wrote his prophetic book, all the empires prophesied were still to come in the future. But when John wrote the book of Revelation, the Babylonian, Medo-Persian and the Greco-Macedonian empires had passed from history. Jesus and the apostles were living in the Roman Empire, the fourth Empire of Daniel 7. So, the prophecies in Revelation 13 and Revelation 17 in the form of beasts refer entirely to the Roman Empire and its ten resurrections. (For detailed explanation, please refer to the booklet titled “*The Beast of Revelation: Myth, Metaphor or Soon-Coming Reality*?” by John H. Ogwyn, available free of charge from the Living Church of God at www.lcg.org).

The nature and history of the great false Church based in Rome was prophesied as the little horn of Daniel 7:8, but also as the other beast of Revelation 13:11-18 and the Great Whore of Revelation 17. The ten resurrections of the Roman Empire were prophesied as the 10 horns of the fourth beast of Daniel 7, but also as the 10 horns of the beast of Revelation 13. These ten horns were on the seventh head of the beast of Revelation 13. The last 7 of the 10 horns on the 7th head of the beast of Revelation 13 corresponded to the 7 heads of the beast of Revelation 17. These 7 heads of the beast of Revelation 17 were the seven resurrections of the Holy Roman Empire ridden by the great Whore which is identified as the great false church based in Rome. The ten horns on the seventh head of the beast of Revelation 17 also corresponded to the ten toes of Nebuchadnezzar’s image of Daniel 2.

Six resurrections of the Holy Roman Empire have already been fulfilled, and the seventh is soon to take place. The ten horns on the seventh head signify that it will be a combination of ten rulers in league with the false Church. Fulfillment of these prophecies in the Book of Revelation thus provides further proof that the New Testament like the Old Testament is backed by the power of Almighty God. Hence it is the true word of God.

***God Even names King Cyrus Century and a Half in Advance***

God through Isaiah the prophet prophesied about the coming of a Persian king named Cyrus century and a half in advance who would let the Jewish captives go free and rebuild Jerusalem.

Isaiah 44:28 (NKJV), “28 Who says of Cyrus, 'He is My shepherd, and he shall perform all My pleasure, saying to Jerusalem, "You shall be built," and to the temple, "your foundation shall be laid." '

Isaiah 45:1, 13, “1 Thus says the Lord to his anointed, to Cyrus, whose right hand I have held, to subdue nations before him; and I will loose the loins of kings, to open before him the two leaved gates; and the gates shall not be shut…13 I have raised him up in righteousness, and I will direct all his ways: he shall build my city, and he shall let go my captives, not for price nor reward, says the Lord of hosts.”

In this remarkable prophecy God named the ruler a century and a half in advance and foretold what he would do. The British Museum contains the cylinder of King Cyrus of Persia, dated to 538 B.C. which records a description of his conquest of Babylon and his policy of tolerance for the religions of his subject peoples. The Bible records Cyrus’ decree allowing the Jews taken captive by Nebuchadnezzar to return to their land and rebuild Jerusalem and the Temple. Through the fulfillment of this prophecy, God of the Bible again demonstrates His total control over the lives of people and affairs of mankind.

***God of the Bible is Sovereign over the Entire Earth***

In the astonishingly accurate fulfillment of these detailed prophecies, the God of the Bible demonstrates His Almighty power, and proves that the gods of all other religions are false gods. In fact they are no gods at all, but idols. He has declared ‘…from ancient times things that are not yet done, saying, 'My counsel shall stand…" as stated in Isaiah 46:10, and has brought it to pass.

The God of the Bible rules not only in Israel, but He is Sovereign over all the kingdoms of men and appoints over them whomever He wills. When King Nebuchadnezzar’s heart was lifted up with pride because of the greatness and might of the Babylonian kingdom he had built, he was abased by his mind being turned into a beast for 7 years. Daniel thus describes the lessons he learnt to his successor Belteshazzar in Daniel 5:18-21(NKJV):

“18 O king, the most high God gave Nebuchadnezzar your father a kingdom, and majesty, and glory, and honor: 19 And for the majesty that he gave him, all people, nations, and languages, trembled and feared before him: whom he would he slew; and whom he would he kept alive; and whom he would he set up; and whom he would he put down. 20 But when his heart was lifted up, and his mind hardened in pride, he was deposed from his kingly throne, and they took his glory from him: 21 And he was driven from the sons of men; and his heart was made like the beasts, and his dwelling was with the wild asses: they fed him with grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven; till he knew that the most high God ruled in the kingdom of men, and that he appoints over it whomsoever he will.”

**CHAPTER 12**

**GOD CONTROLS AFFAIRS OF INDIVIDUALS**

God of the Bible prophesied about great empires and has demonstrated His almighty power to bring them to pass. Some might argue that God could fulfill prophecies about great empires, but He cannot control the lives of kings and individuals. To convince such skeptics God gave remarkably detailed prophecies in Daniel 11 which have been fulfilled precisely. Let’s look at these prophecies verse by verse and see how God assured that they were brought to pass. The verses are quoted from the NKJV:

***Incredible Prophecies in Daniel 11***

Daniel 11, **Verse 1**: “Also in the first year of Darius the Mede, I, even I, stood up to confirm and strengthen him.”

The first year of Darius was 539 BC. The ‘I’ referred to here is God’s angel.

**Verse 2**: “And now I will tell you the truth: Behold, three more kings will arise in Persia and the fourth shall be far richer than them all; by his strength, through his riches, he shall stir up all against the realm of Greece.”

Daniel received this vision in the third year of Cyrus the Great (Daniel 10:1). God said that four more kings would reign after Cyrus. Actually, there were at least 12 more Persian kings after Cyrus, but the first four were the important ones.

The “three more kings” were Cambyses (530-522 BC), the elder son of Cyrus, who secretly killed his younger brother Smerdis after inheriting the throne, Pseudo-Smerdis (522 BC) an imposter who passed himself off as Cyrus’ younger son, and Darius I (522-486 BC). After the imposter was discovered, the Persian nobles rejected Pseudo-Smerdis in favor of Darius I.

The fourth king Xerxes (the husband of Esther) who was the strongest and richest of them all invaded Greece. He reigned from 486-465 BC.

**Verses 3-4**: “Then a mighty king shall arise, who shall rule with great dominion, and do according to his will. And when he has arisen, his kingdom shall be broken up and divided toward the four winds of heaven, but not among his posterity nor according to his dominion with which he ruled; for his kingdom shall be uprooted, even for others besides these.”

This verse introduces King Alexander the Great. Alexander’s father, King Philip of Macedonia planned a great invasion to conquer the Persian Empire with an army mainly of Greeks. But he died before the plans could be completed. His son Alexander took over his plans and invaded the Persian Empire. He defeated the Persian army at the Battle of Issus in 333 B.C. (Daniel 8:2, 5-6). Then he swept down into Egypt. Then in a final battle at Arbella (331 B.C.) he crushed the Persian Empire. From there Alexander marched on a conquest all the way to India, sweeping all rulers before him. Alexander certainly “ruled with great dominion and did according to his will” as prophesied.

Here is how Daniel 8:4-8 (NKJV) provide details about the rise of the Persian Empire represented by a ram, and its crushing by Alexander, represented by a he-goat:

“3 Then I lifted my eyes and saw, and there, standing beside the river, was a ram which had two horns, and the two horns were high; but one was higher than the other, and the higher one came up last. 4 I saw the ram pushing westward, northward, and southward, so that no animal could withstand him; nor was there any that could deliver from his hand, but he did according to his will and became great.

“5 And as I was considering, suddenly a male goat came from the west, across the surface of the whole earth, without touching the ground; and the goat had a notable horn between his eyes. 6 Then he came to the ram that had two horns, which I had seen standing beside the river, and ran at him in the fury of his power. 7 And I saw him confronting the ram; he was moved with rage against him, attacked the ram, and broke his two horns. There was no power in the ram to withstand him, but he cast him down to the ground and trampled him; and there was no one that could deliver the ram from his hand. 8 Therefore the male goat grew very great; but when he became strong, the large horn was broken, and in place of it four notable ones came up toward the four winds of heaven.”

Both Daniel 11 and Daniel 8 indicate that Alexander’s kingdom would be broken up and divided into 4 divisions, but not to his posterity. Now see how this verse was fulfilled.

*A Manual of Ancient History* (Student Series) by Rawlinson says: "Cut off unexpectedly in the vigor of early manhood [in his 33rd year, June, 323 B.C.], he [Alexander] left no inheritor, either of his power or of his projects" (p. 237). Alexander’s infant son was murdered in 310 and an illegitimate brother assassinated in 317. Thus, Alexander had no descendants or blood relatives to succeed him.

Then an attempt was made to hold the empire together jointly in the name of Alexander’s nephew and unborn son. But that attempt failed. Then Antigonus, one of Alexander’s generals, made a bid for power. But he was unable to consolidate his position. In the Battle of Ipsus in 301 BCE, the coalition of Seleucus, Lysimachus and Ptolemy defeated him and he died in that battle. That is the meaning of the phrase “for his kingdom shall be uprooted, even for others besides these.”

By 301 B.C. four divisions emerged out of the Kingdom, each ruled by one of Alexander’s generals, just as prophesied. These were:

1. Ptolemy (Soter), ruling Egypt, part of Syria and Judea.

2. Seleucus (Nicator), ruling Syria, Babylonia and territory east to India.

3. Lysimachus, ruling Asia Minor.

4. Cassander, ruling Greece and Macedonia.”

Cassander and Lysimachus were the two weaker of the four generals.

The other two, however, ruling in Syria and Egypt respectively expanded their rule and territory and engaged in two centuries of conflict and struggle in the Middle East. It is these two kingdoms, one north of Jerusalem (The Seleucid empire in Syria), the other south (the Ptolemies of Egypt) that Daniel 11 primarily focuses on in the next several verses.

**Verse 5**: “Also the king of the South shall become strong, as well as one of his princes; and he shall gain power over him and have dominion. His dominion shall be a great dominion.”

The king of the South mentioned here was Ptolemy I. The phrase “one of his princes” refers to Seleucus Nicator, who originally served as a general under Ptolemy. While Ptolemy was tied up in war after Alexander’s death, Seleucus gained control in the north, and founded the Seleucid dynasty. As verse 5 says, this dynasty actually wielded more power than the king of the south. Seleucus ended up with Alexander’s far-eastern territory, all the way to India. His western boundary included the region known as Syria today. He also ruled the areas known anciently as Assyria and Babylon.

From this point on in the prophecy, the angel focuses on Egypt under the Ptolemies, known as the ‘King of the South’ and Greater Syria under the Seleucids, known as the “King of the North.

**Verse 6**: “And at the end of some years they shall join forces, for the daughter of the king of the South shall go to the king of the North to make an agreement; but she shall not retain the power of her authority, and neither he nor his authority shall stand; but she shall be given up, with those who brought her, and with him who begot her, and with him who strengthened her in those times.”

Both kingdoms remained hostile to one another. In 285 BCE Ptolemy I died. Meanwhile Antiochus II (called Theos) came to the throne in Syria. In 260 he initiated a war with the King of the South. The war was terminated in 252 when the two powers attempted an agreement whereby the daughter (Bernice) of the King of the South, Ptolemy (II) Philadelphus, was to marry the King of the North. Antiochus II divorced his wife Laodice. (George Rawlinson, *A Manual of Ancient History*, pp. 251-252.) But neither Antiochus Theos nor Bernice could retain that power. After Ptolemy Philadelphus died in 247 BC, Antiochus II promptly gave up Bernice and retook Laodice as his wife. But still angry from being banished years earlier, Laodice stayed with Theos long enough to conceive and then had her husband poisoned, thus securing the throne for his and her son, Seleucus II. She then tracked down Bernice and had her assassinated as well, squelching any hope of the Ptolemies to have a descendent on the Seleucid throne in the north. Fulfillment of these detailed prophecies indicates that God can raise any human beings to fulfill any purpose He wishes.

**Verses 7-9**: “But from a branch of her roots [meaning from Bernice’s parents, or a sibling] one shall arise in his place, who shall come with an army, enter the fortress of the king of the North, and deal with them and prevail. And he shall also carry their gods captive to Egypt, with their princes and their precious articles of silver and gold; and he shall continue more years than the king of the North. Then the king of the North shall come to the kingdom of the king of the South, but shall return to his own land.”

Soon after Laodice killed his sister Bernice, Ptolemy III sought to avenge his sister’s death. Rawlinson says: "Ptolemy Euergetes [the III, eldest son of Philadelphus (p. 272) and therefore Bernice's brother, a branch of her roots] invaded Syria, B.C. 245, to avenge the murder of his sister, Bernice...In the war which followed, he carried everything before him" (Rawlinson, *ibid*., p. 252).

Ptolemy III attacked the king of the North [Seleucus II] and captured the capital city of Antioch. He carried back with him immense wealth and many idols and vessels that Persian Emperor Cambyses had taken from Egypt in 526 BC.

Ptolemy III continued to rule till his death in 221 BC, nearly six years after the death of Seleucus II in 226 BC, thus fulfilling the words “he shall continue more years than the king of the North”. Seleucus II had attempted an attack on Ptolemy III, but returned to Syria when his attempt failed, thus fulfilling the prophetic words “Then the king of the North shall come to the kingdom of the king of the South, but shall return to his own land.”

**Verses 10-12**: “However, his sons shall stir up strife, and assemble a multitude of great forces; and one shall certainly come and overwhelm and pass through; then he shall return to his fortress and stir up strife. And the king of the South shall be moved with rage, and go out and fight with him, with the king of the North, who shall muster a great multitude; but the multitude shall be given into the hand of his enemy. When he has taken away the multitude, his heart shall be lifted up; and he will cast down tens of thousands, but he will not prevail.”

After their father’s death, the sons of Seleucus II (Seleucus III and Antiochus III the Great) assembled great forces and attacked the king of the South to recover their Port and fortress Seleucia. Seleucus III reigned for only 3 years because he was poisoned. But Antiochus III did “overwhelm and pass through,” recovering his fortress Seleucia and conquering Judea. However, he gained control of Judea only for a short time.

Antiochus III returned to his fortress, but his taking Judea stirred up strife. It enraged Ptolemy IV, the king of the South. He retaliated and defeated the much larger army of Antiochus III at the battle of Raphia. He killed tens of thousands of Syrian troops and retook Judea to Egypt.

Even though Ptolemy IV won the battle, he did not consolidate the victory for Egypt, thus fulfilling the words ‘he will not prevail’. He made a hasty peace with Antiochus III and returned to debauched living in Egypt.

**Verses 13-16**: “For the king of the North will return and muster a multitude greater than the former and shall certainly come at the end of some years with a great army and much equipment. And in those times, many shall rise up against the king of the South; also, certain violent men of your people shall exalt themselves in fulfillment of the vision, but they shall fall. So the king of the North shall come and build a siege mound, and take a fortified city; and the forces of the South shall not withstand him. Even his choice troops shall have no strength to resist. But he who comes against him shall do according to his own will, and no one shall stand against him. He shall stand in the Glorious Land with destruction in his power.”

Ptolemy IV died in 204 BC, and his infant son, Ptolemy (V) Epiphanes came to the throne. The Egyptian provinces were in turmoil because of the terrible rule of Ptolemy IV. So Antiochus III formed a coalition, assembled a great army and attacked Egypt in 201 BC. He made an alliance with Philip (V) of Macedonia and others; and according to Josephus, many Jews sympathetic to him joined him against the king of the South.

That was in fulfillment of the phrase “certain violent men of your [Daniel’s] people shall exalt themselves in fulfillment of the vision.” But the Egyptian general Scopus crushed this rebellion (v. 14).

Then the king of the North (Antiochus III) responded with another invasion. He captured the fortified city of Sidon in 198 BC, where Scopus surrendered. After capturing Sidon, Antiochus defeated Egypt at Mount Panium in 198 BC and took complete control of Judea (the “Glorious Land”).

**Verse 17**: A clearer and better translation of this verse is provided in the Revised English Bible: “He [the king of the North, Antiochus III] will resolve to advance with the full might of his kingdom; and, when he has agreed terms with the king of the south, he will give his young daughter in marriage to him, with a view to the destruction of the kingdom; but the treaty will not last nor will it be his purpose which is served.”

After having defeated Scopus, Antiochus III wanted to control all of Egypt. With this goal in mind, he gave his daughter Cleopatra (not the Egyptian queen of 31 BCE) to Ptolemy V in marriage. Rawlinson says on page 254, "Coele-Syria and Palestine promised as a dowry, but not delivered." He hoped that she would act in his interests. But she sided instead with her husband, frustrating her father’s purpose and thus fulfilling the words “nor will it be his purpose which is served.”

**Verses 18-19**: “After this he shall turn his face to the coastlands, and shall take many. But a ruler shall bring the reproach against them to an end; and with the reproach removed, he shall turn back on him. Then he shall turn his face toward the fortress of his own land; but he shall stumble and fall, and not be found.”

When Antiochus III realized that his purpose in Egypt was frustrated, he began a campaign against islands and cities of Asia Minor and the Aegean. He also gave asylum to Hannibal of Carthage, the enemy of Rome. Hannibal assists Antiochus in landing in Greece, bringing him into conflict with Rome. The ruler who brings the reproach of defeat in Asia Minor and the Aegean coasts to an end is the young Roman general Scipio who defeated Antiochus at the Battle of Magnesia in 190 BC. The Romans deprived him of much of his territory, and took several hostages to Rome, including Antiochus’ son. In addition, Rome imposed heavy tribute upon him.

Antiochus returned to his fortress Antioch in disgrace. Unable to pay the heavy tribute demanded by the Romans, Antiochus tried to plunder the Temple of Belus in Elymais within his own kingdom. This enraged the people so much that the local forces killed him, thus fulfilling the words “Then he shall turn his face toward the fortress of his own land; but he shall stumble and fall, and not be found.”

**Verse 20**: “There shall arise in his place one who imposes taxes on the glorious kingdom; but within a few days he shall be destroyed, but not in anger or in battle.”

After Antiochus III’s death, his son Seleucus (IV) Philopater was also unable to pay the taxes to Rome (apocryphal book 2 *Maccabees* 3:7-40). He sent Heliodorus, a Jew, to plunder the temple at Jerusalem. But Heliodorus obtained nothing. Seleucus later poisoned by Heliodorus was thus killed ‘but not in anger or in battle.’ Heliodorus then assumed control with the support of other Syrian officials who were tired of the excesses of the Seleucid rulers.

**Verse 21**: “And in his place shall arise a vile person, to whom they shall not give the honor of royalty; but he shall come in peaceably, and seize the kingdom by intrigue.”

In the place of Seleucus IV, his younger brother, the infamous Antiochus (IV) Ephphanes arose to whom the Syrian officials supporting Heliodorus would not give the honor of royalty. Antiochus Epiphanes had earlier been taken as hostage to Rome. But by flattery he enlisted the aid of neighboring king Eumenes II of Pergamum and officials at home in forcing out Heliodorus and obtained the throne (ruling from 175-164 BC.) “He astonishes his subjects by an affectation of Roman manners” and “good natured profuseness” [flattery] (Rawlinson, *Manual of Ancient History*, p. 255).

**Verse 22**: “With the force of a flood they shall be swept away from before him and be broken, and also the prince of the covenant.”

Those who opposed Antiochus Epiphanes, including Heliodorus were swept away by him. The prince of the covenant referred to here is the Jewish high priest. Verse 22 is saying that Antiochus would even go so far as to murder the Jewish high priest. History confirms that Onias III was high priest in Judea at the time, and that Antiochus put him to death in 172 B.C. According to Rawlinson (*Manual of Ancient History*, p. 255), Jews “were driven to desperation by the mad project of this self-willed monarch.” Antiochus IV appointed a Hellenistic Jew who changed his name to the Greek Jason as the replacement high priest. But only after 3 years he was replaced by another Hellenizing apostate named Menelaus.

**Verses 23-24**: “And after the league is made with him he shall act deceitfully, for he shall come up and become strong with a small number of people. He shall enter peaceably, even into the richest places of the province; and he shall do what his fathers have not done, nor his forefathers: he shall disperse among them the plunder, spoil, and riches; and he shall devise his plans against the strongholds, but only for a time.”

After the Jews made a treaty with him, Antiochus Epiphanes acted deceitfully with them. Even though he had only a small number of supporters in the beginning, he eventually gained a large following through deceit and flatteries and became strong. He entered Galilee peaceably. As a temporary ploy to gain support among the masses, Antiochus took from the rich and gave to the poor. Then he did what his fathers or forefathers had not done. Rulers before him had typically treated the Jews well. But Antiochus IV far exceeded his fathers in his ruthlessness and cruelty toward the Jews. He also imposed unbearable taxes on the Jews. Much of this struggle between the Jews and the Syrian kingdom is recorded in the apocryphal book of *Maccabees* (in the Hebrew Bible).

**Verses 25-27**: “He shall stir up his power and his courage against the king of the South with a great army. And the king of the South shall be stirred up to battle with a very great and mighty army; but he shall not stand, for they shall devise plans against him. Yes, those who eat of the portion of his delicacies shall destroy him; his army shall be swept away, and many shall fall down slain. Both these kings’ hearts shall be bent on evil, and they shall speak lies at the same table; but it shall not prosper, for the end will still be at the appointed time.”

In this case, Antiochus IV was stirred up to war with Egypt by his nephew Ptolemy VI, the son of Ptolemy V and Antiochus IV’s sister Cleopatra. Rawlinson, pages 255-256, says, "Threatened with war by the ministers of Ptolemy Philometor [now king of the south], who claim Coele-Syria and Palestine as the dowry of Cleopatra, the late queen-mother, Antiochus marches against Egypt...B.C. 171" (pp. 277-278). But he was met by his nephew leading another immense army from Egypt.

But Ptolemy VI did not stand, for his own trusted officers plotted against him. Antiochus IV was victorious at Pelusium. Continuing in Rawlinson, p. 278: "After his victory at Pelusium, Antiochus advanced to Memphis, and having obtained possession of the young king's person [Ptolemy Philometor, king of the south], endeavored to use him as a tool for effecting the entire reduction of the country." In 174 BCE, both these kings sat at a banquet. Antiochus pretended to ally himself with the young Ptolemy, against his brother, Euergetes II, but each was trying to deceive the other. Their lies did not prosper and the outcome would be as God predetermined it.

**Verse 28**: “While returning to his own land with great riches, his heart shall be moved against the holy covenant; so he shall do damage and return to his own land.”

Antiochus while returning to Syria in 168 BCE with great plunder from Egypt, encountered another Maccabean insurrection. Verse 28 says his heart was moved against the “holy covenant,” meaning the Jewish worship system. “He shall do damage” means Antiochus looted the Jewish Temple in Jerusalem of many golden vessels and massacred many Jews. Greek historian Polybius mentioned that he “despoiled most sanctuaries.”

**Verses 29-30**: “At the appointed time he shall return and go toward the south; but it shall not be like the former or the latter. For ships from Cyprus [the actual word used is Kittim, which is Hebrew for “western lands,” here meaning Rome] shall come against him; therefore, he shall be grieved, and return in rage against the holy covenant, and do damage. So he shall return and show regard for those who forsake the holy covenant.”

In verse 29, God prophesied of a third campaign by Antiochus into Egypt. But this one did not fair well for him like the previous two successful ones. He was cut off by a Roman fleet from Cyprus. Popillius, the commander of the Roman fleet forced Antiochus IV to accept surrender terms in which he had to end his campaign against Egypt and restore the island of Cyprus to Egyptian rule. On returning home through Judea, Antiochus IV vented his frustration and anger on the Jews. He plotted with leaders inside the temple, showing favor to those who rejected the Jewish religion and adopted the pagan Greek (Hellenistic) customs, but persecuting those who remained loyal.

Antiochus did his utmost to destroy the Jewish religion, by passing laws that forbade its practice. He forced some to violate Jewish laws, and murdered them if they refused. For example, Eleazar, an aged scribe was forced to open his mouth to eat swine’s flesh. He refused, and himself went to the rack and was flogged to death. In another case, two women who had circumcised their children were publicly paraded around the city and then hurled down headlong from the wall. Others who had gathered together in a cave to keep the Sabbath day secretly were betrayed and all burned together. A mother and her seven sons were tortured one after the other and killed in the presence of the governor for refusing to eat swine’s flesh.

**Verse 31**: “And forces shall be mustered by him, and they shall defile the sanctuary fortress; then they shall take away the daily sacrifices, and place there the abomination of desolation.”

This verse refers to the horrid events of 168 BC which are described in 2 Maccabees 5:11-15. Antiochus Epiphanes thought Judea was in a revolt. So he mustered his armed forces and entered Jerusalem and killed 80,000 men, women and children. He then defiled the Temple by setting up a statue of the Greek god Zeus (Rawlinson, ibid. p. 255) [the “abomination of desolation”] in the holy of holies – the holiest inner most place in the Temple - and sacrificed a pig on the temple altar. He stopped the daily sacrifice and tried to stamp out the Jewish religion completely.

**Verses 32-35**: “Those who do wickedly against the covenant he shall corrupt with flattery; but the people who know their God shall be strong, and carry out great exploits. And those of the people who understand shall instruct many; yet for many days they shall fall by sword and flame, by captivity and plundering. Now when they shall fall, they shall be aided with a little help; but many shall join with them by intrigue. And some of those of understanding shall fall, to refine them, purge them, and make them white, until the time of the end; because it is still for the appointed time.”

Antiochus IV corrupted the apostate Jews with flattery and rewards for forsaking their religion and adopting Hellenistic culture. Many Jews succumbed to his persecution and rewards for apostasy.

But the time frame of the prophecy changes in verse 32 and has a dual aspect. It refers to people who knew their God at that time, the Maccabees, [who were the patriotic followers of Judas Maccabeus of the Hasmonian priestly dynasty and were determined to continue to keep God’s law] and later the Christians.

The Maccabees resisted Antiochus Epiphanes and his successors. When an officer of Antiochus came to the city of Modein to enforce Antiochus’ decree concerning idolatrous worship, Mattathias, the leading priest slew him. Then Mattathias fled to the hills and led a band of guerrillas. Thus began the Maccabees revolt against Antiochus.

Mattathias was helped in his cause by his five sons, particularly Judas, nick-named Maqqaba (Aramaic for hammer, from which the name Maccabees is derived). Many of these patriots died for the cause. But their heroism ultimately drove the Syrians out of the country.

In their dual aspect, these verses also refer to the true Christians and the Church, prophesying their coming mighty works of instructing many and converting them to Christianity, and their persecution by sword, flame, captivity and plundering. When they are persecuted, God would help them with a little help (which would include God’s holy spirit, giving them tremendous strength to remain faithful even when faced with martyrdom), but would allow many to be martyred to test and try them and purge them. Others would infiltrate the Churches by intrigue. Some of the true Christians would be martyred, to purge them, refine their character and make them spiritually white or pure. This would go on till the time of the end, meaning the return of Jesus Christ.

Verse 35 refers to the “time of the end.” This means that the previous verses were prophecies that applied to the contests between the Seleucid and Egyptian dynasties, and later to the Seleucids and the Jewish patriots, the Maccabees. Thus we have seen that these verses have been precisely fulfilled in history, from the rule of Cyrus the Great to the time of the Maccabees.

**Verse 36**: “Then the king shall do according to his own will: he shall exalt and magnify himself above every god, shall speak blasphemies against the God of gods, and shall prosper till the wrath has been accomplished; for what has been determined shall be done.”

The prophecy now shifts to New Testament times. In 65 BCE Rome took possession of Syria [hence Judea as well] which became a Roman province. The Roman emperor now became the king of the North. Verse 36 is an apt description of Roman emperors who did according to their will, instituting emperor worship, thus exalting themselves above God. The phrase “shall prosper till the wrath has been accomplished” means that the Roman Empire will persist in some form or another right till the very end, when Jesus Christ shall return and God’s wrath on the Roman Empire will be completed.

**Verse 37**: “He shall regard neither the God [correct rendering is ‘gods’] of his fathers nor the desire of women, nor regard any god; for he shall magnify himself above them all.”

The Roman emperors did not regard their old Roman gods. The phrase they also did not have “a desire for women” indicates that the emperors were either homosexuals (14 of the first 15 emperors were actually homosexuals) or exalted themselves above the Babylonian god Tammuz for whom women wept. Roman emperors did not regard any of these gods because they instituted emperor worship and magnified themselves above all these gods.

**Verses 38-39**: “But in their place he shall honor a god of fortresses [or forces, KJV]; and a god which his fathers did not know he shall honor with gold and silver, with precious stones and pleasant things. Thus, he shall act against the strongest fortresses with a foreign god, which he shall acknowledge, and advance its glory; and he shall cause them to rule over many, and divide the land for gain.”

The Roman emperors demanded worship of the emperor as well as the empire itself because of its strength. Standards were idolatrous emblems of empire/emperor worship. In addition, enormous defense expenditures made Rome the strongest military power the world had ever seen till that time, thus fulfilling the prophecy “he shall honor the god of forces”.

But then, beginning with Constantine the Great in 313 AD, Roman emperors began to honor a god, the pope of the false Church based in Rome, that his fathers did not know, with gold, silver, precious stones and other pleasant things.

Later Roman emperors, and after that rulers of later resurrections of the Roman Empire began to act against the strongest enemy states and religious institutions on behalf of the foreign god [the papacy, which was of Babylonian origin, the original Babylonian Mystery Religion]. They acknowledged the papacy as a god and worked to advance its glory. They caused the popes to rule over many peoples and divided the land for the benefit of both church and state. The pope calls himself the Vicar of Christ, meaning “in place of Christ.” Thus, the pope calls himself a ‘god’ in place of Christ.

Verses 36-39 covered the centuries from the beginning of Christianity in the early Roman Empire to the origin of the Catholic Church and the Catholic-dominated Holy Roman Empire with its seven resurrections right down to our modern times. The seventh resurrection is yet in the near future.

Thus, we see a demonstration of God’s Almighty power in first prophesying these events and then fulfilling them unerringly. Individual kings, queens and generals are mentioned and what each would do. All these prophecies have been fulfilled. All this is ancient history. It would serve no purpose in our time to record all this other than to convince the skeptic beyond a shadow of doubt that God of the Bible has total and complete control in the affairs of men. God can raise men and women, foretell what they would do centuries in advance, and bring it to pass unerringly demonstrating His total control over the lives of individuals, including kings. Besides being a demonstration of God’s Almighty power, fulfillment of such intricate and detailed prophecies is also proof that the Bible is the true inspired word of God. Each and every word in it is God inspired and can be relied upon. Book of no other religion dares to prophesy like this the fulfillment of which can be proven by history.

Now the remaining verses of Daniel 11 move to the time frame called “the time of the end”, yet in the future, to the time of the seventh resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire.

**Verses 40-45**: “40 And at the time of the end shall the king of the south [which from other prophecies will be an alliance headed by an Islamic power] push at him: and the king of the north [which since the time of the Roman Empire has always been the Roman Empire or the Holy Roman Empire] shall come against him like a whirlwind , with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships; and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow and pass over. 41 He shall enter also into the glorious land, and many countries shall be overthrown: but these shall escape out of his hand, even Edom, and Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon. 42 He shall stretch forth his hand also upon the countries: and the land of Egypt shall not escape. 43 But he shall have power over the treasures of gold and of silver, and over all the precious things of Egypt: and the Libyans and the Ethiopians shall be at his steps. 44 But tidings out of the east and out of the north shall trouble him: therefore, he shall go forth with great fury to destroy, and utterly to make away many. 45 And he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas in the glorious holy mountain; yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.”

These verses describe yet a future war between the King of the North, a European alliance headed by a military dictator, in all likelihood a German, and the King of the South, an Islamic alliance. The King of the North defeats the King of the South. He will then likely set up his regional headquarters in the holy land, but mobilization of the Kings of the East will trouble him. He will go forth in his fury to destroy them. But God prophecies that he shall come to his end at the second coming of Jesus Christ, and no one will help him.

This prophecy is described in summary form in the article titled “*Summary of Sequence of End-Time Events*,” and in detail in the book “*World in Bible Prophecy*,” both available free at my web site www.ChurchofGodMessage.com.

**CHAPTER 13**

**PROPHECIES ABOUT THE MESSIAH FULFILLED**

The New Testament is all about Jesus Christ as the Messiah. Let’s examine Old Testament prophecies that Jesus fulfilled to prove that He was indeed the prophesied Messiah to come. These fulfilled prophecies provide proof that both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible are indeed the word of God.

***Can Prophecies be Fulfilled by Coincidence?***

One can argue that prophecies by an individual can be fulfilled by coincidence. One individual can fulfill one prophecy in his life by chance. The probability of the same individual fulfilling two prophecies is less. The same individual fulfilling three prophecies by coincidence reduces further exponentially. The same individual fulfilling four prophecies becomes further remote and so on.

The Jewish scriptures prophesied the coming of the Messiah and gave many prophecies about His birth, life, and death that He would fulfill so that we may recognize Who He was. Literally God’s truthfulness and His Almighty Power are at stake if these prophecies were not fulfilled.

Peter the apostle confirmed in Acts 3:18: “18 But those things which God foretold by the mouth of all His prophets, that the Christ would suffer, He has thus fulfilled.” He also stated in 2 Peter 1:16: "For we did not follow cunningly devised fables when we made known to you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, but were eyewitnesses of His majesty." Peter also warned in 2 Peter 3:2-4 to "be mindful of the words which were spoken before by the holy prophets" because "scoffers will come in the last days" questioning and ridiculing Scripture, "saying, 'where is the promise of His coming?'"

As God and Jesus Christ fulfilled all their prophecies about ancient empires and nations, they certainly would have made sure to fulfill their prophecies about the life, death and resurrection of the Messiah. Let’s now look at specific Old Testament prophecies that foretold the birth, life and death of the Messiah which Jesus fulfilled.

The UCG booklet: “*Jesus Christ: The Real Story*” states on p. 16:

“To claim that you are God is one thing—but to convince people that you are indeed what you say you are is quite another. So how did Jesus' closest followers come to be so convinced that they would lay down their lives for that belief?

“Many Old Testament prophecies of the Messiah were fulfilled in precise detail by Jesus of Nazareth. Neither the Jews nor the disciples of Jesus understood at the time that Jesus was fulfilling the messianic prophecies of the Old Testament—even though at times He told them this was the case (Luke 18:31; Matthew 26: 56)

.

“After Jesus was resurrected, He began to help His disciples understand the Scriptures, and the disciples were inspired to declare that Jesus was indeed the Messiah. The proof they offered was the very Scriptures [or prophecies] they had not previously understood.”

Then on p 18: “The New Testament writers cite messianic prophecies from the Old Testament more than 130 times. By some estimates the Old Testament contains 300 prophetic passages that describe who the Messiah is and what He will do. Of these, 60 are major prophecies. What are the chances of these prophecies being fulfilled in one person?

“…the mathematical odds that all of these prophecies could have converged by chance in the events of the life of Jesus are staggeringly minute—to the point of eliminating any such possibility.

“Astronomer and mathematician Peter Stoner, in his book *Science Speaks*, offers a mathematical analysis showing that it is impossible that the precise statements about the One to come could be fulfilled in a single person by mere coincidence.

“The chance of only eight of these dozens of prophecies being fulfilled in the life of one man has been estimated at 1 in 10 to the 17th power. That would be 1 chance in 100,000,000,000,000,000.

“How can we put this in terms we can comprehend? Dr. Stoner illustrates the odds with this scenario: "Take 1017 silver dollars and lay them on the face of Texas [with its approximate land area of 262,000 square miles]. They will cover all of the state two feet deep. Now mark one of these silver dollars and stir the whole mass thoroughly, all over the state. Blindfold a man and tell him that he can travel as far as he wishes, but he must pick up one silver dollar and say that this is the right one [that was marked].

"What chance would he have of getting the right one? Just the same chance that the prophets would have had of writing these eight prophecies and having them all come true in any one man."

“But that is only eight of the dozens of prophecies of the Messiah. Using the science of probability, the chance of as many as 48 of these prophecies coming to pass in one person is 1 in 10 to the 157th power—a 1 followed by 157 zeros (1963, pp. 100-109).

“One or two fulfillments in Jesus' life could be dismissed as coincidental. But when the instances of fulfilled prophecies are counted up, the law of probability quickly reaches the point where mere probability becomes certainty. This is one of the proofs Jesus was the promised Messiah—the messianic prophecies were accurately and precisely fulfilled in Him.”

Many aspects of Jesus' birth, life, suffering and death were prophesied in great detail before they actually happened. Let’s look at these prophecies.

*The Virgin Birth*

Isaiah 7:14 prophesied, "Behold, a virgin shall conceive and bear a Son, and shall call His name Immanuel."

Details about the fulfillment of this prophecy are provided by the gospel writers Luke and Matthew. Matthew 1:18-23 (NKJV) states, “18 Now the birth of Jesus Christ was as follows: After His mother Mary was betrothed to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Spirit. 19 Then Joseph her husband, being a just man, and not wanting to make her a public example, was minded to put her away secretly. 20 But while he thought about these things, behold, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, "Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take to you Mary your wife, for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit. 21 And she will bring forth a Son, and you shall call His name Jesus, for He will save His people from their sins." 22 So all this was done that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying: 23 "Behold, the virgin shall be with child, and bear a Son, and they shall call His name Immanuel," which is translated, "God with us."

The virgin birth was also prophesied at the time when Adam and Eve ate of the forbidden fruit. Genesis 3:15 (NKJV) stated the curse on the serpent, or Satan, “15 And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her Seed; He shall bruise your head, and you shall bruise His heel." The woman’s Seed is in the singular meaning one man and not her descendants. Here the curse on the serpent does not state that her Seed would be Adam’s Seed as well, but only the woman’s Seed, thus pointing to a virgin birth of the Messiah who would bruise Satan’s head by remaining sinless and qualifying to remove Satan from the rulership of the earth.

No Israelite except Jesus has ever claimed a virgin birth. That literally excludes everyone except Jesus being the Messiah.

*Descendant of Abraham and King David*

God promised Abraham in Genesis 12:3 (NKJV), “…And in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed." The same promise is repeated in Genesis 18:18 and 22:18. The promise was passed on to Abraham’s son Isaac (Genesis 26:4) and onto his son Jacob (Genesis 28:14).

Then the promise of the scepter, or rulership was passed on by Jacob to his son Judah in Genesis 49:10, “The scepter shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet…” Since the rulership forever will belong to the Messiah, this prophecy implies that the Messiah would be a descendant of Judah. This was confirmed by Isaiah the prophet in Isaiah 11:1-2 to David’s father Jesse, “1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots: 2 And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord.”

Jeremiah the prophet confirmed that the Messiah would be a descendant of David in Jeremiah 23:5, “5 Behold, the days come, says the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.”

Paul the apostle confirmed in Galatians 3:16 that the promises to Abraham were fulfilled in Jesus Christ, “16 Now to Abraham and his Seed were the promises made. He does not say, "And to seeds," as of many, but as of one, "And to your Seed," who is Christ.”

Matthew and Luke provide detailed genealogies of Jesus to show that He was a descendant of King David both on his mother’s and father’s side, thus fulfilling these prophecies.

Using probability of one individual fulfilling this prophecy by chance narrows the field to descendants of David only. But at the time of Jesus they would still number millions in the world.

*Messiah to Come from Bethlehem*

The place the Messiah would come from was prophesied in Micah 5:2 (NKJV), “But you, Bethlehem Ephrathah, though you are little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of you shall come forth to Me the One to be Ruler in Israel, whose goings forth are from of old, from everlasting."

When Herod inquired of the Jews where the King of the Jews would come from, they had no hesitation in referring to this prophecy (Matthew 2:5-8).

This prophecy was very precise. There were two Bethlehems, one in the land of Judah and the other in the land of Zebulun to the north. The prophecy was specific in stating that the Ruler would come from Bethlehem in Judea. That Jesus was born in Bethlehem Ephrathah in Judea is confirmed in Matthew 2:1.

This prophecy narrows the field to less people who could qualify to fulfill the prophecies concerning the Messiah, if we exclude the virgin birth prophecy.

*The Exact Year the Messiah Would Appear was Prophesied*

Daniel 9:25 (NKJV) prophesied when the Messiah would appear: “25 "Know therefore and understand, That from the going forth of the command To restore and build Jerusalem Until Messiah the Prince, There shall be seven weeks and sixty-two weeks; The street shall be built again, and the wall, Even in troublesome times.”

This prophecy provides the number of years from the time the decree to build Jerusalem would be issued till the appearance of the Messiah as seven plus 62 weeks or a total of 69 weeks. Sixty-nine weeks would number 483 days. There is a principle of a year for a day in fulfillment of prophecy. When Israelite spies spied out the land of Canaan for 40 days and refused to go in and possess the land they were punished for 40 years. In the same way the prophesied Day of the Lord will be of one year duration in its fulfillment. So, 483 days of this prophecy would equal 483 years till the appearing of the Messiah from the time the decree to build the walls of Jerusalem would be issued.

UCG booklet “*Jesus Christ: The Real Story*” on p. 21 describes how this prophecy was fulfilled:

“After Jerusalem's destruction by the Babylonians in 586 B.C., the Babylonian Empire was succeeded by the Medo-Persian Empire. This empire's kings issued several such decrees that were recorded in the Bible (by Cyrus in 538 B.C., found in Ezra 1:1-2, and by Darius in 520 B.C., described in Ezra 6:8).

“But the one that was issued by Artaxerxes Longimanus in 457 B.C. (Ezra 7:11-26) points us specifically to Christ's ministry. Counting 483 years from the 457 B.C. date of this decree brings us to A.D. 27 (keep in mind that because there is no year "0" we have to add one year to the calculation).

“A.D. 27 was a significant year. Jesus was baptized this year and began His public ministry.

“The Jews of Christ's day were certainly familiar with Daniel's prophecy. And regardless of which decree one might choose as the starting point of the 483 years, the time for the Messiah to appear had elapsed during Jesus' day. Messianic fervor was rampant with the realization that the fulfillment of this prophecy was near at hand (compare John 1:41; 4:25).

“If the Messiah was to come, He would have to arrive on the scene just when Jesus did—in the exact year!”

When we consider the fulfillment of this prophecy the individuals who could fulfill these prophecies so far can probably be narrowed only to one individual, Jesus Christ. But let’s continue to see the many other prophecies Jesus fulfilled.

*The Lamb of God*

When one considers the prophecy in Micah about the ruler to come and the fact that the Messiah would be a descendant of King David, one can understand why the Jews in Jesus’ day would think that the Messiah would be a conquering King who would deliver them from Roman rule and restore Israel to a glorious state as a nation. None of these prophecies specifically pointed to the Messiah being a sacrifice for sins. Nobody could have connected the sacrificial system with the sacrifice of the Messiah as the Lamb of God. Isaiah 53 specifically prophesied about the death and suffering of One, but these prophecies could not be specifically connected to the Messiah by human reasoning alone. The Jews were focused on the Messiah being a conquering King.

Only when the angel announced the conception of Jesus Christ was it first revealed in Matthew 1:21 that His life would be connected with delivering Israel from their sins. Only after Jesus’ sacrifice was it revealed to His disciples that He was the Lamb of God who took away the sins of mankind. But John the Baptist had declared it to be so.

John the Baptist said of Jesus in John 1:29, “29 The next day John saw Jesus coming toward him, and said, "Behold! The Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world!”

Killing of the Passover lambs on the 14th day of the first month in ancient Israel was a prophecy about the sacrifice of the Messiah as the Lamb of God to be sacrificed for the sins of mankind. Jesus Christ fulfilled this prophecy by being arrested, tried, crucified and dying on the exact day the Passover lambs were sacrificed.

Hebrews 10:4 (NKJV) says, “4 For it is not possible that the blood of bulls and goats could take away sins.” But verses 12-14 state that the sacrifice of Jesus Christ was the offering for sin once and for all, “12 But this Man, after He had offered one sacrifice for sins forever, sat down at the right hand of God, 13 from that time waiting till His enemies are made His footstool. 14 For by one offering He has perfected forever those who are being sanctified.”

Hebrews 10:8-10 state, “8 Previously saying, "Sacrifice and offering, burnt offerings, and offerings for sin You did not desire, nor had pleasure in them" (which are offered according to the law), 9 then He said, "Behold, I have come to do Your will, O God." He takes away the first that He may establish the second. 10 By that will we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.”

The author of Hebrews here explains that the sacrificial system God instituted in ancient Israel in the Law was a representation of Jesus' sacrifice that would take away the first, meaning the sacrificial system, replacing it with His sacrifice as the price paid for sin once and for all to sanctify the people

.

The life of the Creator was of more value than the lives of all His creation put together. That’s why the shed blood of the Creator could pay for the sins of all His creation. Thus, the sacrificial system of ancient Israel, but particularly the Passover lambs were a prophecy about the sacrifice of the Messiah.

*Betrayal, Suffering and Death of the Messiah*

Many prophecies concerning the betrayal, suffering and death were fulfilled by Jesus Christ. The sheer number of prophecies fulfilled now leaves no doubt that all these prophecies could not be fulfilled by one particular man by coincidence. They leave no doubt that Jesus Christ was the prophesied Messiah. Here are some of the prophecies fulfilled by Jesus Christ:

• *Messiah would be betrayed by a familiar friend*. This was prophesied in Psalm 41:9, "Even my own familiar friend in whom I trusted, who ate my bread, has lifted up his heel against me." his prophecy was fulfilled by Judas Iscariot as stated in John 13.

• *Messiah would be forsaken by His followers* was prophesied in Zechariah 13:7: "Strike the Shepherd, and the sheep will be scattered." This was fulfilled when all His disciples forsook Him and fled when He was arrested (Mark 14:50).

• *The price of His betrayal would be 30 pieces of silver*. This was prophesied in Zechariah 11:12-13: "…so they weighed out for my wages thirty pieces of silver. 13 And the Lord said to me, "Throw it to the potter"--that princely price they set on me.” This was fulfilled when Judas Iscariot covenanted for 30 pieces of silver with the chief priests to betray Jesus (Matthew 26:14-15).

• *That Messiah would be put to death with criminals* was prophesied in Isaiah 53:12: "And He was numbered with the transgressors." This was fulfilled when "two robbers were crucified with Him, one on the right and another on the left" (Matthew 27:38).

• *Messiah would be crucified*. This was prophesied in Psalm 22:16: "They pierced My hands and My feet." Remarkably, this prophecy described a form of execution, the crucifixion, which would not come into practice for some 800 years after it was written.

• *Messiah’s body would be pierced*. This was prophesied in (Zechariah 12:10): "They will look on Me whom they pierced". In fulfillment John tells us in John 19:34 that "One of the soldiers pierced His side with a spear, and immediately blood and water came out."

• *Messiah would be offered vinegar and gall*. This was prophesied in Psalm 69:21: "They also gave me gall for my food, and for my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink. This was fulfilled when Jesus was offered vinegar with gall to drink as stated in Matthew 27:34, “34 They gave him vinegar to drink mingled with gall.”

• *None of His bones would be broken* was prophesied in Psalm 34:20: "He guards all his bones; not one of them is broken." When the Jews came to break the legs of the 3 crucified men, they did not break Jesus’ legs because He had already died on the cross when the Roman soldier pierced His side with a spear, as described in John 19:32-34.

• *People would cast lots for His clothing*. This was prophesied in Psalm 22:18: "They divide My garments among them, and for My clothing they cast lots". John confirms in John 19:23-24 that this prophecy was fulfilled.

• *Messiah would not retaliate* was prophesied in Isaiah 53:7 (NKJV): "He was oppressed, and He was afflicted, yet He opened not His mouth; He was led as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before its shearers is silent, so He opened not His mouth." Its fulfillment is described in Matthew 27:12-14: “12 And while He was being accused by the chief priests and elders, He answered nothing. 13 Then Pilate said to Him, "Do You not hear how many things they testify against You?" 14 But He answered him not one word, so that the governor marveled greatly.”

• *Messiah would pray for those who would have Him put to death*. This was prophesied in Isaiah 53:12: "He... made intercession for the transgressors." This was fulfilled when Jesus prayed on the cross, "Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they do." (Luke 23:34).

Thus, we see that the God of the Bible prophesied in detail the manner of the death of the Messiah and all the prophecies were fulfilled in precise detail in the crucifixion and death of Jesus Christ. Probabilistically it is impossible for a particular one man to fulfill all the prophecies by mere coincidence. Therefore, we can be certain that Jesus was the prophesied Messiah and He died for the sins of mankind as God foretold.

Despite so many prophecies being fulfilled, some still argue that Jesus contrived to fulfill these prophecies.

***Was fulfillment of Prophecies Contrived?***

Some critics argue that Jesus manipulated events to fulfill prophecies. One example they site is in Matthew 21:1-7 (NKJV) where Jesus instructed His disciples to procure a donkey and its colt to fulfill the prophecy, “5 "Tell the daughter of Zion, 'Behold, your King is coming to you, lowly, and sitting on a donkey, a colt, the foal of a donkey.' " 6 So the disciples went and did as Jesus commanded them. 7 They brought the donkey and the colt, laid their clothes on them, and set Him on them.”

Another example is given in Luke 22:37-38 (NKJV) in which Jesus made sure that His disciples had swords so that He could be numbered with the transgressors or criminals, “37 For I say to you that this which is written must still be accomplished in Me: 'And He was numbered with the transgressors.' For the things concerning Me have an end." 38 So they said, "Lord, look, here are two swords." And He said to them, "It is enough."

Jesus as God of the Old Testament had prophesied in Isaiah 46:11, “Indeed I have spoken it; I will also bring it to pass…” In His life as a human He brought it to pass as He prophesied. He was fulfilling these prophecies exactly as He had prophesied.

But the notion that Jesus manipulated events to fulfill prophecies is so far-fetched. Just imagine as a human being the kind and number events He would have had to contrive to fulfill all the prophecies He fulfilled.

He would have had to manipulate His human ancestry, His place and year of birth, and virgin birth. He would have had to manipulate events with Roman and Jewish authorities to fulfill all the prophecies related to His suffering, crucifixion and death. And what purpose could He have had in manipulating events to fulfill prophecies? All to die a horrible death preceded by terrible suffering? People were willing to make Him King (John 6:15, 12:12-19), but He avoided the opportunity and chose the route of suffering and death. What purpose would manipulating events that would lead to His suffering and death have served? Thus, the theory that He contrived to fulfill all the prophecies is sheer nonsense.

Jesus fulfilled all the prophecies to fulfill God’s purpose. He chose to become a humble servant to suffer and die to pay the death penalty for the sins of mankind and “give His life a ransom for many (Matthew 20:28). A person of such character could not have been a deceiver, a charlatan or a fake who would manipulate events for personal gain. He had nothing personal to gain by dying.

Peter stated, "...Those things which God foretold by the mouth of all His prophets, that the Christ would suffer, He [Jesus] has thus fulfilled" (Acts 3:18).

Paul confirmed that "Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures" and that "He was buried, and ...He rose again the third day according to the Scriptures" (1 Corinthians 15:3-4).

Jesus fulfilled prophecies foretold 300 – 1000 years ahead of time so that we may believe without any shadow of doubt that He was the Messiah. Fulfilled prophecies are proof that the Bible is indeed the inspired word of God as Jesus Himself affirmed.

**CHAPTER 14**

**PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN OUR TIMES**

Not only have prophecies been fulfilled in the distant past, many end-time prophecies have already been fulfilled and/or are being fulfilled. Here are some of them:

***Gospel of the Kingdom Shall be Preached***

One of the most important prophecies given by Jesus Christ about the end time is stated in Matthew 24:3-4, 14 (NIV), “3 As Jesus was sitting on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to him privately. “Tell us,” they said, “when will this happen, and what will be the sign of your coming and of the end of the age?” 4 Jesus answered…14 And this gospel of the kingdom will be preached in the whole world as a testimony to all nations, and then the end will come.”

After the original apostles passed away, no one ever preached the good news of the return of Jesus Christ to set up God’s Kingdom. In 1843-1845, William Miller of the Baptist Church predicted that Jesus Christ will return sometime between March 21, 1843 and March 21, 1844. When Jesus Christ did not return, then the date of April 18, 1844 was briefly set. When that date came and went, recalculations were done, and a date of October 10, 1844 was set for the return of Jesus Christ. That too turned out to be a great disappointment.

Even in recent times, people of other faiths have also predicted the end of the world, but all have proved to be false prophets.

However, Jesus prophesied that the gospel (meaning good news) of the establishment of the kingdom would be preached in the whole world before the end of the age. The establishment of God’s Kingdom, however, is preceded by catastrophic events. That too was predicted in the same prophecy by Jesus Christ in Matthew 24:3-14, 21-22:

“3 And as he sat upon the mount of Olives, the disciples came unto him privately, saying, Tell us, when shall these things be? and what shall be the sign of your coming, and of the end of the world? 4 And Jesus answered and said unto them, Take heed that no man deceive you. 5 For many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and shall deceive many. 6 And you shall hear of wars and rumors of wars: see that you be not troubled: for all these things must come to pass, but the end is not yet. 7 For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: and there shall be famines, and pestilences, and earthquakes, in diverse places. 8 All these are the beginning of sorrows.

“9 Then shall they deliver you up to be afflicted and shall kill you: and you shall be hated of all nations for my name's sake. 10 And then shall many be offended, and shall betray one another, and shall hate one another. 11 And many false prophets shall rise and shall deceive many. 12 And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold. 13 But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved.

“14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.”

“21 For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be. 22 And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened.”

Jesus prophesied that just before His return, world conditions would be such that the world would be on the brink of annihilation. He will then return and put an end to man’s madness.

No one has ever preached that part of the warning message to the world because no one clearly understood Bible prophecy. However, Jesus prophesied that before His return and the end of the age, the gospel will be preached in the whole world as a testimony against the world. That prophecy has been fulfilled, and is being fulfilled as you read this book, and by my messages delivered every week on Saturdays at 9.00 AM, USA Eastern Standard Time, which anyone can hear in his own language by just tuning his ear to hear them.

That prophecy began to be fulfilled when in September – October of 1917, Herbert W. Armstrong’s wife Loma Armstrong had a dream in which angels appeared to her to let her know that God had a special work for Herbert Armstrong and her to perform. Herbert Armstrong thought nothing of the dream but was then knocked down financially as his businesses were wiped out during the Great Depression. He was also challenged to research into religion because his wife started keeping the Sabbath (from Friday sunset to Saturday sunset). What he discovered changed his life. His mind was opened to the understanding of prophecy, and he realized that he had been commissioned by God to preach the gospel of the kingdom of God to the whole world in fulfillment of Matthew 24:14. That preaching began in autumn of 1928 when he gave his first sermon to the Church of God.

Since that time, Herbert Armstrong preached the gospel till his death on January 16, 1986. Since then the Church of God has been preaching the same gospel message. My weekly messages are part of the same preaching in fulfillment of the prophecy in Matthew 24:14.

***Prophesied Elijah has Already Come and Gone***

God through Malachi the prophet prophesied in Malachi 4:5-6, “5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord: 6 And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse” [translated as ‘destruction’ in the Complete Jewish Bible].

This prophecy has already been fulfilled by Herbert W. Armstrong. But how do we prove that Herbert W. Armstrong was Elijah the prophet God sent?

From a reading of this prophecy no one would be able to recognize who would fulfill the role of Elijah the prophet. Would he be a great psychologist or a great religious leader who would preach a convincing message of “putting father back as the head of the family” or a message about bringing families together or ‘Focus on the Family”? Many preachers and psychologists preach such messages. So, this prophecy cannot be understood by reading only the Old Testament. The key to understanding this prophecy is found in the New Testament.

*Proof that Herbert W. Armstrong was the Prophesied Elijah God Sent*

Malachi also wrote in 3:1-2: “***1*** Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me...” This means that one in the spirit and power of Elijah would come in the end time to prepare for the coming of the Messiah.

In the New Testament Jesus Christ unlocked the key to recognizing who the Elijah would be through his commission. Jesus’ disciples asked Him in Matthew 17:10-13: “10… Why then say the scribes that Elias [Elijah] must first come? 11 And Jesus answered and said unto them, Elias truly shall first come, and restore all things. 12 But I say unto you, That Elias is come already, and they knew him not, but have done unto him whatsoever they listed [wished]…13 Then the disciples understood that He spoke to them of John the Baptist.”

Because this prophet was to come in the spirit and power of Elijah, he would fulfill the role that Elijah the prophet fulfilled in ancient Israel. In Elijah’s time Israel had departed from the true God and had started worshipping Baal and other pagan gods. In the entire nation only 7,000 were left who had not worshipped Baal. Elijah came and restored worship of the true God in ancient Israel.

John the Baptist came and prepared the way for the first coming of Jesus Christ. But when Jesus discussed this prophecy with the disciples, John the Baptist had already come and been beheaded by Herod. He could not have restored anything after his death. This means that the prophecy Jesus gave was about an end-time Elijah that would come and prepare the way for the second coming of Jesus Christ by restoring all things, meaning the truths concerning the true God, all the true doctrines and the right way to worship God. Malachi 4:5-6 also prophesied that the Elijah would come just before the Day of the Lord. And the Day of the Lord is in the end time. It is the last one year of the three and a half year long Great Tribulation. That is yet in the future.

The modern Elijah would fulfill a similar role. He would restore correct worship of the true God in spiritual Israel, which is God’s true Church.

What are the “all things” Jesus referred to that one coming in the spirit and power of Elijah would restore? Just as the original Elijah restored worship of the true God in ancient Israel, and one in the spirit and power of Elijah before the first coming of Jesus Christ, meaning John the Baptist restored the worship of the true God in the correct way to prepare for Jesus Christ’s first coming, another prophet in the spirit and power of Elijah would be sent before the second coming of Jesus Christ to restore the worship of the true God in the right way.

There was no New Testament Church when the original Elijah or John the Baptist came. So, they could restore the worship of the true God only based on the understanding provided by the prophets before them. But for the end-time Elijah, the restoration of all things would also additionally require restoring all the doctrines laid down by Jesus Christ and established by the apostles in the original Church, the knowledge of which had been lost over the centuries.

The Elijah to be sent in the end time is also twice mentioned by Jesus Christ as more than a prophet in Matthew 11:9 and Luke 7:26: “But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I say to you, and more than a prophet.”

In Church rankings, only an apostle ranks higher than a prophet as mentioned in 1 Corinthians 12:28: “And God has appointed these in the church: first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, administrations, varieties of tongues.” Mr. Armstrong thus was more than a prophet in Jesus’ words because he was an apostle as well. It was necessary for this Elijah to have the rank of an apostle as well because he would be required to restore and establish doctrine since only apostles could establish doctrine.

This end-time commission of an Elijah-like prophet was so important that in August-September 1917, Mr. Armstrong was appointed to fulfill this commission through a dream to his wife Mrs. Loma Armstrong which he described in Volume 1 of his autobiography, pages 203-205.

In the dream Mrs. Armstrong was with Mr. Armstrong and saw a solid mass of brilliant stars filling the sky and then vanishing. She realized these were angels. Then 3 angels appeared and one of them put his arm around both of them. The angel told them that Christ was really coming in a very short time.

Mr. Armstrong writes: “At that time, we had been going quite regularly to motion-picture theatres. She asked the angel if this were wrong. He replied Christ had important work for us to do, preparing for His coming – there would be no time for “movies.”

Thus, Mr. Armstrong was specifically commissioned to prepare for the second coming of Jesus Christ to earth. He restored all things as Jesus prophesied about the end-time Elijah who was also an apostle.

James describes in James 5:10 the mark of a true prophet of God: “10 My brethren, take the prophets, who spoke in the name of the Lord, as an example of suffering and patience.”

The mark of a true prophet of God is suffering and patience. Mr. Armstrong endured a great deal of suffering patiently to establish the Philadelphian era of God’s Church, as described in his two-volume autobiography, available free of charge from the Philadelphia Church of God at its web site www.pcog.org.

Mr. Armstrong mentioned several times that he spent 28 years in grinding poverty. In his autobiography he described how many times there was no food in the house with little children, housing was always a problem, much of the time he usually had only one threadbare suit to wear and the family was clothed with mended used clothing, how he had to battle ministers and wolves in sheep’s clothing who had entered the Church and tried to destroy it in its infancy.

He had to struggle to start Ambassador College to train young men for the ministry. After that effort was successful and God’s Church started growing, Satan was implanting tares in the Church regularly. These infiltrators led rebellions in the early 1970s and late 1970s when leading evangelists and ministers caused splits and led away thousands of members from the Church. At one time they induced the state of California to put the Church in receivership, impound all its assets and take over the Church. But Mr. Armstrong’s explanation through advertisements in the Wall Street Journal of what the Attorney General of California was doing was illegal led to the lawsuit being withdrawn and the receivership proceedings ended. This was another attempt by Satan that could have destroyed the Church.

God built the modern era of His Church through the blood, sweat and total selfless sacrifice of Herbert W. Armstrong. Surely no man with his own intelligence and strength could have overcome all the obstacles that Mr. Armstrong overcame. These are proofs that God Himself was leading His end-time work through Mr. Armstrong. His lifelong suffering for the sake of God’s work proves that he was a true prophet of God.

*Prophecies Fulfilled by Herbert W. Armstrong’s Life*

Further proof that Herbert W. Armstrong was the one sent by God in the spirit and power of Elijah the prophet and an apostle is provided by the fulfillment of many prophecies in his life that the end-time Elijah and apostle was to fulfill.

1) *Elijah the Prophet*

We have already seen that Mr. Armstrong fulfilled the prophecy of Malachi the prophet as one in the spirit and power of Elijah the prophet coming before the dreadful day of the Lord which is the last one year of the three and a half years of the Great Tribulation. He also fulfilled Jesus Christ’s prophecy that he would restore all the doctrines and truths to God’s true Church before His return to earth. He restored more than 20 major doctrines or truths to God’s Church. You can read all about them in the booklet “Fundamental Beliefs of the United Church of God,” available free at www.ucg.org.

2) *Preaching the Gospel as a Witness unto All Nations*

As already mentioned, he fulfilled the prophecy in Matthew 24:14 that ‘this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.’ All of Christianity preached about Jesus Christ’s sacrifice for forgiveness of sins of mankind, but no one knew that the gospel was mainly about the literal Kingdom of God. Herbert Armstrong first of all restored the knowledge that the gospel is about the reestablishment of the Kingdom of God on earth, and not only the forgiveness of sins through the sacrifice of Jesus Christ, and started preaching it. It went global beginning in 1953 when it began to be preached in Europe after having been preached only in the North American continent.

3) *Prophecy that One Man Would Start and End an Era of the Church*

God founded the modern era of His Church through Mr. Armstrong. God’s Church since its founding in 31 A.D. was prophesied to go through 7 eras mentioned in the Book of Revelation, chapters 2 and 3 in the Bible. These eras are Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamos, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia and Laodicea. The modern era which we identify as the Philadelphian era began with the preaching of Mr. Armstrong around the fall of 1928 and ended with his death on January 16, 1986. Then began the Laodicean era of God’s Church! This is indicated by certain prophecies.

Zechariah 4:9 states: “The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house, his hands shall also finish it.”

Mr. Armstrong told all the Church members that he fulfilled this Zerubbabel office. His entire ministry is testimony to the fact that Mr. Armstrong built the house, which is a symbol for an era of the Church, by restoring all things. Mr. Gerald Flurry, pastor general of the Philadelphia Church of God explains this prophecy in his booklet *Malachi’s Message* (available free of charge at www.pcog.org) on p. 59:

“When the Bible refers directly to Christ doing the building, it is usually stated as “not made with hands” (2 Corinthians 5:1), or something is accomplished “without hands” (Daniel 2:45), or “a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands” (Hebrews 9:11).

“The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house; his hands shall also finish it …” (Zechariah 4:9). This verse is clearly talking about a “hands-on” operation.

“It twice mentions hands, designating a starting and finishing of a project. The *Anchor Bible Commentary* says “hands” is literal and expresses participation in temple building. That is, it was built through a human being with “hands,” not built “without hands”—as Christ does it without the use of a human instrument.

“Mr. Armstrong wrote a letter to the Church on March 19, 1981. Here is an excerpt from that letter: “Zerubbabel built the second temple to which Jesus came the first time. John the Baptist prepared the way before the FIRST coming. But WHO was to build the SPIRITUAL temple to which Christ shall soon come the second time? Who was to prepare the way before His Second Coming?

“Remember, God does things in DUAL stages. As Zerubbabel built the first temple of MATERIAL stone, wood and other materials, he was a forerunner or type of one through whom Christ would raise up or build the SPIRITUAL TEMPLE—His Church of our time, prior to the Day of the Lord and Christ’s Second Coming. As John the Baptist prepared the way in the PHYSICAL wilderness of the Jordan River for the first coming of the HUMAN Jesus (both man and God), then coming to His MATERIAL temple, and to His PHYSICAL people Judah, ANNOUNCING the Kingdom of God to be set up more than 1,900 years later, SO God would use a human messenger in the SPIRITUAL wilderness of 20th-century religious confusion, to be a voice CRYING OUT the gospel of the KINGDOM OF GOD, about the SPIRITUAL CHRIST, coming in SUPREME POWER AND GLORY to His SPIRITUAL TEMPLE, to actually ESTABLISH that spiritual KINGDOM OF GOD.

“Brethren, HAS THAT BEEN DONE BY THIS CHURCH?

“Did God raise up a one-man LEADERSHIP to be used by Him in building this spiritual TEMPLE and in proclaiming after 1,900 years the true GOSPEL OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD IN ALL THE WORLD—to even go to kings and heads of nations (Revelation 10:11)—in bringing the Church back to the FAITH ONCE DELIVERED (Jude 3)?

“HAS THIS HAPPENED, IN YOUR DAYS, AND HAS GOD BROUGHT YOU INTO THIS PROPHETIC FULFILLMENT AS A PART OF IT?

“HAS ANYONE ELSE DONE IT?”

“Did Mr. Armstrong think one man would and did fulfill this prophecy? Absolutely! He speaks of “one,” “a human messenger,” “a voice,” “a one-man leadership”—and then ends by asking, “HAS ANYONE ELSE DONE IT?”

“Mr. Armstrong continued: “God has never removed a man called to a specific leadership or assignment or commission until his mission is COMPLETED.” Did Mr. Armstrong complete his mission? Did he finish “this house,” “restore all things” and “turn the hearts of the fathers”? He most certainly did!

“The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of THIS HOUSE; his hands shall also FINISH it; and you shall know that the LORD of hosts has sent me unto you” (Zechariah 4:9). “House” is a very common word in the Bible. In the Englishman’s Hebrew and Chaldee Concordance, where “house” is used, the scriptures cover 13 PAGES. The word “temple” in the same book covers only ONE FOURTH OF A PAGE. “Temple” is not used here—and “temple” is not nearly as common in the Bible as the word “house.”

“The word “house” can mean an “inner part”—or only a part of something greater. It’s a name given to human bodies as being frail and transitory (Job 4:19). The word is used as “tent” (Genesis 27:15; 33:17). It is used as the “house of the spider” (Job 8:14). It’s applied to wealth, property and all that belongs to a family. All uses of this word are very temporary (like a Church era). The word temple is used in a more permanent way or to indicate a very long period of time. For example, the word “temple” often applies to ALL SEVEN CHURCH ERAS. It also applies to ETERNAL LIFE.

“The subject is “this house” and IS IN THE CONTEXT OF THE SEVEN CHURCH ERAS (Zechariah 3:7-8; 4:2, 10; Revelation 1:20). If we put all the scriptures together, it could just as well be called “this era.” And Zerubbabel did finish it. Mr. Armstrong not only laid the foundation, as we often say today—HE BUILT THE WHOLE HOUSE. When he died, the PHILADELPHIA ERA WAS COMPLETED. He restored all things (Matthew 17:10-11). No more foundational doctrines need to be added to the house. ALL WE NEED TO DO IS WALK IN Mr. Armstrong’s FOOTSTEPS…**Primarily, we just need to maintain the “house” and do God’s Work.”**

So, Mr. Armstrong did lay the foundation of this house, the Philadelphia era of God’s Church, and also finished it. The Philadelphia era ended when he passed away on January 16, 1986. But he had completed building the ‘house.’ His task was to ‘restore all things’ to God’s Church, meaning the doctrines and other truths about God’s way of life Jesus Christ taught to the original apostles. No more doctrines would need to be added. There were many controversies raised by tares or infiltrators in the Church about doctrines along the way. But when Mr. Armstrong died all doctrines had been settled so that the Church now knows that we have all the truths concerning doctrines for God’s Church. The house has been completed. And since all doctrines have been restored, there is no need for another apostle to be sent in the end time to restore what has already been completely restored, and none is prophesied to come.

4) *Mr. Armstrong’s Coming and Passing Away Were Prophesied*

There are two prophecies that pointed to Mr. Armstrong’s death, one in the Old Testament and one in the New Testament.

The first prophecy is Zechariah 4:9, which has already been explained. It states, “The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house; his hands shall also finish it; and you shall know that the Lord of hosts has sent me unto you.” When the task of finishing the house or restoring all the doctrines to the Church had been completed, Mr. Armstrong died.

Another prophecy that Mr. Armstrong’s death fulfilled is 2 Thessalonians 2:1-12 (NKJV):

“1 Now, brethren, concerning the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ and our gathering together to Him, we ask you, 2 not to be soon shaken in mind or troubled, either by spirit or by word or by letter, as if from us, as though the day of Christ had come. 3 Let no one deceive you by any means; for that Day will not come unless the falling away comes first, and the man of sin is revealed, the son of perdition, 4 who opposes and exalts himself above all that is called God or that is worshiped, so that he sits as God in the temple of God, showing himself that he is God. 5 Do you not remember that when I was still with you I told you these things? 6 And now you know what is restraining, that he may be revealed in his own time. 7 For the mystery of lawlessness [or iniquity] is already at work; only He who now restrains will do so until He is taken out of the way. 8 And then the lawless one will be revealed, whom the Lord will consume with the breath of His mouth and destroy with the brightness of His coming. 9 The coming of the lawless one is according to the working of Satan, with all power, signs, and lying wonders, 10 and with all unrighteous deception among those who perish, because they did not receive the love of the truth, that they might be saved. 11 And for this reason God will send them strong delusion, that they should believe the lie, 12 that they all may be condemned who did not believe the truth but had pleasure in unrighteousness.”

Here is how this prophecy was also about Mr. Armstrong’s death.

In these verses Paul was explaining to the Thessalonians to not give up their normal lives and just wait for the return of Jesus Christ. He explained that Jesus Christ will not return to earth until there will be a falling away from the faith, meaning God’s Church, for only God’s Church has the true faith. In addition, Jesus Christ will not return until the ‘man of sin’ who causes the falling away is revealed.

As most prophecies in the Bible are dual, this prophecy is also dual. Usually duality means that there has been a former fulfillment of prophecy in ancient times, and there will be another greater fulfillment in the time of the end. But there is also another duality that characterizes many prophecies. There is one fulfillment of such prophecies for physical Israel (America and Britain) in the world at large, and another fulfillment in God’s Church. This prophecy in 2 Thessalonians is one such prophecy with a fulfillment in the world and the Church.

The “man of sin to be revealed” mentioned here sits in the temple. Temple in prophecy means God’s Church, as well as the physical temple at Jerusalem. This means that ‘the man of sin’ in the end time will be in God’s Church, as well as another one in the world whom Jesus Christ will destroy at His coming. Revelation 19:20 describes this ‘man of sin’ in the world as the false prophet, whom Jesus Christ will destroy by having him thrown alive in the lake of fire.

This prophecy shows that “the man of sin” in the Church will actually cause the ‘falling away’ from the Church. And the ‘man of sin’ had to be revealed in the end-time. We have already seen the dramatic fulfillment of this prophecy in the Church. If Mr. Armstrong knew the beliefs Joseph W. Tkach Sr. held in secret, he would have never appointed him as pastor general to head the Church after his death. But the “mystery of iniquity” that was working with Joseph Tkach Sr., meaning those helping him, was so well hidden that most Church members and Mr. Armstrong had no clue about it. If he knew, he would not have appointed Joseph Tkach Sr. as pastor general and his successor in the Church.

But now read verses 7-8 again: “7 For the mystery of lawlessness [or iniquity] is already at work; only he who now restrains will do so until he is taken out of the way. 8 And then the lawless one will be revealed…”

Verse 7 says “only he who now restrains will do so until he is taken out of the way.” This means that the “mystery of iniquity” (or the Synagogue of Satan – Revelation 3:9) that was at work in the Church during Mr. Armstrong’s time was actually restrained by Mr. Armstrong. He had to put down 2-3 major rebellions in the Church and would not allow these tares or infiltrators to change any doctrines. He restrained their influence. Then verse 7 says that “he [meaning Mr. Armstrong] who now restrains will do so until he is taken out of the way.” Mr. Armstrong was taken out of the way by death. Then the “mystery of iniquity” perpetrated by the Synagogue of Satan within God’s Church under Joseph Tkach Sr’s stewardship began to work openly. Thus the ‘man of sin’ in the Church was revealed.

*5) A Prophet Gives or Interprets Prophecy*

Prophet by definition means one who utters divinely inspired revelations, or one who foretells future events. This means that a prophet is used by God to either give new prophecies, foretelling future events, or is given special understanding of prophecy.

But God warned in Revelation 22:18, “18 For I testify to everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book: If anyone adds to these things, God will add to him the plagues that are written in this book; 19 and if anyone takes away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part from the Book of Life, from the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book.”

This means that all prophecy has already been recorded in the Bible. No new prophecies would be given. This means that a prophet in the end-time would be given special understanding of prophecies already given, and would not proclaim new prophecies.

Many self-proclaimed prophets and prophecy buffs try to interpret prophecy, but there are certain statements made about prophecy in the Bible that shed light on who understands it. When the Book of Revelation was being revealed to John the Apostle by an angel, and John fell down to worship the angel, here is what the angel told him in Revelation 19:10, “And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, see you do it not: I am your fellow-servant, and of your brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: ***for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy***.”

This means that only those who have the testimony of Jesus Christ that they are His, or His representatives, have an understanding of prophecy.

Daniel the prophet was given major prophecies about the major ruling empires that will hold sway from his time till our time. However, he was informed by the angel revealing prophecies to him in Danial 12:8-10, “8 Although I heard, I did not understand. Then I said, “My lord, what shall be the end of these things?” 9 And he said, “Go your way, Daniel, for the words are closed up and sealed till the time of the end. 10 Many shall be purified, made white, and refined, but the wicked shall do wickedly; and none of the wicked shall understand, but the wise shall understand.”

This means that understanding of most of the prophecies given in the Bible was closed [sealed] till the end time, but that understanding would be given in the end-time to the one who had the testimony of Jesus that he is His representative.

Before Herbert W. Armstrong started preaching, nobody understood the meaning of various symbolic beasts with multiple horns and mysterious women mentioned in prophecies in the books of Daniel and Revelation. The meaning of these prophecies was first revealed to Herbert W. Armstrong. All of Christianity in the USA recognizes that the greatest contribution that Herbert Armstrong made was to provide an understanding of prophecy.

Even the timing of the understanding of prophecy was prophesied in Revelation 17:9-10 (NKJV), “9 “Here is the mind which has wisdom: The seven heads are seven mountains on which the woman sits. 10 There are also seven kings. Five have fallen, one is, and the other has not yet come. And when he comes, he must continue a short time.”

The seven heads here represent the seven resurrections of the Holy Roman Empire, and a woman in prophecy is a Church. In this case the Church is the Roman Catholic Church. When understanding of these prophecies were revealed to Herbert W. Armstrong around 1935, the five resurrections of the Holy Roman Empire had already passed, the five that have fallen. At that time the sixth resurrection, that of the Hitler-Mussolini Axis had just come into existence, the ‘one is.’. The seventh is still to come, the ‘other has not yet come.’

Understanding of prophecy in the end-time was not revealed to an ordinary Jew. God sent a Jew, Herbert W. Armstrong, as a prophet in the spirit and power of Elijah as prophesied in Malachi 4:5-6 to reveal all the prophecies.

No man in his life and death can fulfill so many Bible prophecies and not be the man these prophecies mention. It is simply impossible for a man to fulfill all these prophecies by mere coincidence. Therefore, we can be certain that Mr. Armstrong was the prophesied Elijah and apostle to come who came and restored all truths to God’s Church in the form of major doctrines, prepared the way for Jesus Christ’s second coming, and gave an understanding of prophecy to the world.

***Prophet Like Moses***

Around the time of Jesus, the Jews were expecting the Messiah to appear because of the 69 weeks prophecy in Daniel 9:25, which states, “25 "Know therefore and understand, that from the going forth of the command to restore and build Jerusalem until Messiah the Prince, there shall be seven weeks and sixty-two weeks…”

John the Baptist came at that time and was baptizing people. The Jews who were expecting the Messiah to appear wanted to know who he, John the Baptist, was. So they asked him. This is how the apostle John 1:19-25 records the conversation, “19 And this is the record of John [the Baptist], when the Jews sent priests and Levites from Jerusalem to ask him, Who are you? 20 And he confessed, and denied not; but confessed, I am not the Christ. 21 And they asked him, What then? Are you Elias? And he says, I am not. Are you that prophet? And he answered, No. 22 Then said they unto him, Who are you? that we may give an answer to them that sent us. What say you of yourself? 23 He said, I am the voice of one crying in the wilderness, Make straight the way of the Lord, as said the prophet Esaias [Isaiah]. 24 And they which were sent were of the Pharisees. 25 And they asked him, and said unto him, Why baptize you then, if you be not that Christ, nor Elias, neither that prophet...”

Besides the Messiah mentioned in Daniel 9:25, these verses indicate that the Jews were familiar that two other prophets who were prophesied to come in the future. One was Elijah the prophet mentioned in Malachi 4:5-6 quoted earlier. Moses also prophesied that another prophet like him would come, mentioned in Deuteronomy 18:15-19 (NKJV):

“15 The Lord your God will raise up unto you a Prophet from the midst of you, of your brethren, like unto me; unto him you shall hearken; 16 According to all that you desired of the Lord your God in Horeb in the day of the assembly, saying, Let me not hear again the voice of the Lord my God, [by the way, that’s why God did not speak directly to Israel after that to honor their wishes, but spoke to them through the prophets] neither let me see this great fire any more, that I die not. 17 And the Lord said unto me, they have well-spoken that which they have spoken. 18 I will raise them up a prophet from among their brethren, like unto you, and will put my words in his mouth; and he shall speak unto them all that I shall command him. 19 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever will not hearken unto my words which he shall speak in my name, I will require it of him.”

If a person has been appointed by God to fulfill a commission, to be effective, he must inform the world in straight and simple terms what office he has been appointed to and what his commission is. Herbert Armstrong realized what office he had been appointed to and declared it to the world. Paul the apostle stated that he had been appointed an apostle to the Gentiles. In this regard, I must now simply state that I have been appointed by God to the office of the prophet Moses mentioned. The fact that I had been appointed to the office of a prophet was not revealed to me first, but to others from whom I learnt about it more than a decade later. Here is how that came about.

By 1990, I had already become known in the USA because of my views on free trade. Then in 1990, Saddam Hussein of Iraq invaded Kuwait and annexed it to his country. The USA was contemplating unilateral action against Iraq. I suggested that the U.S. government not take unilateral action as it is perceived as bullying by other nations, leading to resentment against the USA. I suggested building a coalition through the U.N. first which would legitimize its actions and would not lead to resentment. This sound advice gained me more recognition among nations and made the U.N. relevant again. When the Kuwait crisis was still going on, Satan appears to have informed the Germans that I had been appointed to the office of a prophet.

In 2001, Mr. Gerald Flurry, pastor general of the Philadelphia Church of God published a booklet titled "Who is That Prophet?" After reading that booklet I began to suspect that Satan had informed the Germans about the exact office I had been appointed to. That office was stated by Moses in Deuteronomy 18:15-18 as already quoted.

While Satan may have informed the world that I had been appointed to the office of a prophet like Moses, I was reluctant to accept the idea. The reason simply was that the Bible said Jesus Christ Himself had fulfilled the prophecy about the office of a prophet like Moses.

Peter said so in Acts 3:20-23: "20 and that He [that is God the Father] may send Jesus Christ, who was preached to you before, 21 whom heaven must receive until the times of restoration of all things, which God has spoken by the mouth of all His holy prophets since the world began. 22 For Moses truly said to the fathers, 'The Lord your God will raise up for you a Prophet like me from your brethren. Him you shall hear in all things, whatever He says to you. 23 And it shall be that every soul who will not hear that Prophet shall be utterly destroyed from among the people."

Stephen the martyr also confirmed the same about Jesus Christ being that Prophet like Moses in Acts 7:37: "37 "This is that Moses who said to the children of Israel, 'The Lord your God will raise up for you a Prophet like me from your brethren. Him you shall hear.'

I mulled the idea over for 9 years before I finally accepted it in 2010. What led to my acceptance was the realization that the role of Elijah the prophet had been fulfilled 3 times: once by the original Elijah, second time by John the Baptist before the first coming of Jesus Christ, then by Herbert W. Armstrong before the second coming of Jesus Christ. Then I realized that the role of a prophet like Moses also was to have a threefold fulfillment: once by the original Moses, second time by Jesus Christ Himself and finally a third time before the return of Jesus Christ to earth. So, the world knew about the office I had been appointed to by God 11 years before I knew about it and 20 years before I accepted it to be true.

Here then are the special events that parallel the life of Moses with my life that provide evidence that I have been appointed to the office of the prophet mentioned by Moses.

1. Moses’ life was miraculously preserved. My life too has been miraculously preserved over the past more than 56 years. Attempts have been continuously made on my life since the age of ten, and still continue to be made regularly. By now perhaps hundreds if not thousands of attempts have already been made in almost every way possible, including attempts at poisoning, beating to death, trying to bury me alive, trying to inflict me with the HIV virus, run me down with automobiles or by big trucks while driving, and shooting to death. But God has continued to miraculously preserve me all these decades.

2. God made Moses’ face to shine among the Israelites. God has made my face to shine about a dozen or so times in public places to indicate the role of the prophet I was being called upon to fulfill.

3. As God used ancient prophets as an example to the Israelites to dramatically demonstrate certain key elements of prophecies such as Isaiah going barefoot and naked (Isaiah 20:2-4), God has used me to demonstrate the true diabolically deceiving and lying nature of Satan and the demons by allowing my thoughts and what they palm off as my thoughts to be broadcast 24 hours a day. This is an event unique in the history of mankind. That is proof that I hold the office of a prophet. Such unique events happen only to leaders called upon to do a special work for God, prophets and apostles of God.

What Satan broadcasts as my thoughts are sometimes my thoughts but many times they are what Satan and the demons inject into my mind. These thoughts are diabolically designed to make the objects of the thoughts hate me with their whole being. Invariably these are thoughts designed to be the most damaging to me and make people want to destroy me. Sometimes when I know that a horribly damaging thought is about to be injected into my mind, I am able to block it out. But Satan or the demon broadcasts such thought anyway as my thought to destroy my normal good relations with the person who is the object of the thoughts. Such damaging thoughts can part virtually the very best of friends if one is not aware that these are Satan’s thoughts and not the individual’s own.

For any liar to be effective, he has to mix truth with lies. If the liar lies consistently, then one knows how to react to information provided by the liar. That’s why Satan and the demons many times broadcast my thoughts accurately but mix diabolical lies with them quite often.

God has allowed Satan and the demons to do so to illustrate to human beings how they are the source of much of our thoughts which lead us to follow ways that are contrary to God’s ways. All the filth and evil that Satan and the demons broadcast as my thoughts are slander and lies which indicate who the real source of all such evil is. Many people act on such evil thoughts that pop into their minds and hurt themselves and others by their actions.

The only way for us to discern whether the thoughts coming into our minds are our own or injected by Satan is to know God’s law and ways from the Bible. If the thoughts are contrary to God’s ways, we can be certain that Satan or a demon is the author of them. God has allowed this experience as a warning to the world that dealing with Satan will part the very best of friends and allies. It will lead to destruction. We will see that happen in the very near future when Satan and the demons will bring the world to the brink of annihilation.

All the unusual experiences of prophets of God are designed to teach humanity some lessons or issue warnings. If I was so evil in my thoughts as Satan and the demons try to portray me to be by broadcasting my supposed thoughts, it would serve no purpose for humanity. Only I would suffer because no one would want to associate with me. But it would not benefit humanity at large. However, if these thoughts demonstrate the true diabolical and evil nature of Satan and the demons because they broadcast lies to divide human beings and turn friends into enemies, then humanity is being warned not to deal with Satan and the demons. That indeed is the warning God is giving to humanity through this experience. However, humanity will not pay heed as prophesied events will soon prove. Therefore, Satan and the demons broadcasting my thoughts is a prophetic warning to the world.

As part of the end-time commission to God’s Church, I am issuing God’s warning to the world. But by broadcasting lies as my thoughts, Satan and the demons try to destroy my credibility for those who believe Satan must be broadcasting my true thoughts so that they will not pay heed to the warnings. They want humanity to annihilate itself. They don’t want the world to believe what I am saying about the way individuals can come out alive through the Great Tribulation. Billions will not pay heed to the warning. But Revelation 7 assures us tens of millions will and save themselves in the process.

4. God has used me for another unique event in the history of mankind. Every week God’s angels broadcast my weekly messages to every human being in his or her own language, currently delivered at 9.00 a.m. USA Eastern Standard Time. I deliver my messages in English. But every human being can hear them in his or her own language. That is also proof that I hold the office of a prophet.

5. I have also been the beneficiary of another unique miraculous event. Germans were the first to develop the technical capability to transmit threats electronically to people in their hearing. They abused it to the hilt to literally destroy the lives of tens of millions of Americans, the British and other people around the world to force them to do things against their will, marry interracially, hire and fire people, and every other evil they could imagine and impose by threats. There is no doubt that they have tried to deliver such threats to me many times. But God has always blocked each and every one of these threats miraculously. I have never heard any of these threats. That’s why I am often bold in voicing my opinions because I hear no one threatening me to cease and desist.

6. James 5:10 tells us: “Take, my brethren, the prophets, who have spoken in the name of the Lord, for an example of suffering affliction, and of patience.” God here points out the marks of prophets. They generally suffer affliction and have to endure it patiently for a long time. Mr. Armstrong often pointed to his 28 years of enduring poverty. He certainly fulfilled this identifying mark of a prophet. I too have endured poverty for nearly the entire 44 years of my working life. Thus, as there were certain parallels between the lives of the ancient Moses and Elijah, such as both fasting for 40 days and 40 nights, there have been parallels between the lives of those fulfilling their roles in our time.

7. Mr. Armstrong battled forces outside and inside the Church and endured suffering and poverty to build and protect God’s Church. I have battled forces of German masqueraders [people of German descent living within our nations] and those allied with them for the protection of the Israelite nations of America and British Commonwealth nations in my life since the age of ten. That is when they began making attempts on my life, first in India and then in the USA.

Being a member of the small Sikh religious minority in India, but which contributed disproportionately to the British Indian Army that battled the Germans in both world wars, we were targeted by the Germans for revenge. I was targeted in India by Indians who were allied with the Germans. They began making attempts on my life because I showed much academic promise.

Then after about a year of coming to the USA in 1981 I had diagnosed that the real cause of the economic problems of the USA and British Commonwealth nations at that time was the “so called free-trade” in which everyone was free to export their goods and services to the USA while barring access to American and British goods and services as much as possible. That was an immediate threat to the hostile nation, consisting of Americans of German descent and their allies who were looting American and British wealth. The hostile nation was able to get me kicked out of the PhD program in Marketing at Northwestern University so that I was left without the means to get a secure teaching job. Then they prevented me from getting a decent job all my life in the USA. They destroyed all my businesses. My Information Technology business ideas have been stolen and others have become billionaires using those ideas while I have lived most of my life in poverty, having to depend on the kindness of family and friends sometimes to sustain me. Thus, I have suffered for more than 37 years for the sake of our Israelite peoples while in the USA and more than 57 years in total. As Mr. Armstrong suffered much of his life for the “Church”, I have suffered most my life for the sake of our “State,” meaning America and the British Commonwealth nations.

8. There have been other parallels between the lives of the ancient Elijah and Moses and those fulfilling their roles in our time. Elijah restored the worship of the true God in ancient Israel and protected the nation from the worshippers of Baal wiping out all knowledge and worship of the true God. The end-time Elijah restored the worship of the true God in spiritual Israel, His true Church, by restoring all the true doctrines, and the knowledge of the true gospel of the Kingdom of God. He prevented the ‘Synagogue of Satan” from watering down the doctrines all his life.

God used Moses to deliver ancient Israel from economic and physical slavery in Egypt. God has used me to deliver modern Israel (America and British Commonwealth nations) from a form of economic slavery and also a form of physical slavery from being forced with threats to life or other harm to do things against their will and interests. Here is how God used me to accomplish this:

a) Because of voicing my opinions on the so-called ‘free trade’ and my views on how to deal with Iraq’s annexation of Kuwait, I had become well know by the early 1990s. But I was immediately identified with the Church of God and its message about the coming global catastrophes, military defeat and enslavement of the USA, British Commonwealth nations and the state of Israel’s at the hands of a German-led European alliance, which itself will be in alliance with Islamic nations. The American government thus suspected me of anti-national activities and I was put under 24/7 electronic surveillance.

The U.S. supreme court had made many decisions restricting government surveillance activities as violations of an individual’s right to privacy. The government and even individuals responsible for violating these laws could be subject to large compensation awards for the victims, and government employees could lose their jobs. But electronic surveillance in my case could be justified for possible anti-national activities.

Because I was under surveillance, all those I interacted with could also be legally subjected to incidental surveillance. That is when discrimination conspiracies against me began to be discovered. As more and more people came under the surveillance net, first due to interaction with me, and then the interaction of those individuals with others, the existence of German masqueraders and a vast international German-led conspiracy came to light around 1998-1999.

A German masquerader is a person of German origin living in another country and assuming a name common among the citizens of that country so that he is indistinguishable from its citizens. But he knows his German ancestry and works in Germany’s interests, and against the interests of the country he or she lives in by undermining its economy and often taking actions to allow Germany to loot the wealth of his country; by instigating violence; or taking actions that destroy the social fabric of society. He often behaves in ways that malign the nation he lives in. This is the fifth column Winston Churchill and others were very familiar with.

This German-led conspiracy had remained very effectively hidden because the Supreme Court had forbidden electronic surveillance by the government to protect privacy rights. The whole process of granting permission for surveillance of individuals on suspicion of anti-national or criminal activity was managed by the office of the Chief Justice of the U.S. Supreme Court at the apex, which performs the executive functions for the Supreme Court. At that time, William Rehnquist was the Chief Justice, an American of German origin, who had managed the process so effectively that government servants, civilian or military, shuddered at the thought of running afoul of the Supreme Court by subjecting individuals to surveillance. The American Civil Liberties Union (ACLU) through its numerous lawsuits ensured that the privacy laws were complied with. The government itself and individual government servants did not want to take any chances for fear of the financial impact of the lawsuits in legal costs, huge compensation awards and waste of their time.

My constant preaching and battling the so-called free trade single-handedly for 14 years finally focused the attention of the U.S. Federal government to look into the merits of what I was saying. Then the existence of the hostile nation within our nation [consisting of German masqueraders and their many foreign-born or foreign-origin allies living in the USA] and the conspiracy to destroy our Israelite nations from within was discovered. When the hostile nation was discovered, corrective action was taken based on the solutions proposed in my model of economic development and international trade. It led to the recovery of the auto industry and saved our nations from economic collapse at that time.

b) Discovery of the hostile nation within our nations also led to the discovery of how it had taken over all leading positions in most sectors of the economy, government and academia. Our people of true Israelite descent had been relegated to lower positions of serving those in higher positions occupied by people from the hostile nation. This was a form of economic slavery. And then our Israelite people could be threatened to do things against their will and interests, making them *de facto* slaves. The discovery of the hostile nation freed us to some extent from this economic slavery. It also led to our economic recovery at that time.

c) Discovery of the hostile nation also led to the discovery of its activities and how it was engaged in murdering and destroying true Israelites. It led to the discovery of medical murders, population control through abortion, the solving of the mystery of so many missing children and adults, denial of justice to Israelites because the hostile nation had infiltrated law enforcement and the judicial system. All these types of clandestine murders in the future were halted.

d) When I realized how easy it was to murder people by poisoning them by giving wrong prescriptions or in restaurants, I foresaw a potential disaster for our nations. So, I prayed to God to intervene and save Israelite nations from this potential catastrophe. After my prayer, apparently the hostile nation sent out a call to murder as many Israelites as possible by poisoning them or by other means. The main targets were IT professionals, scientists, serving and retired top military officers, statesmen, business and political leaders. The order also went out for spouses who had married Israelite spouses to murder them and their own children. These orders were carried out. But God answered my prayers and intervened to prevent each and every one of these attempts made at that time around 1997-1998 from succeeding. This intervention probably saved tens of millions of lives in America alone, and probably additional millions in British Commonwealth nations.

If God had not heard these prayers, the U.S. economy could possibly have been destroyed with the murder of most IT professionals. It would also have led to an immediate attack on our nations and certain defeat in war and national slavery.

9. There have also been other parallels between what God used Moses to accomplish, and what my contributions have been. Moses was used by God to reveal His strong nation building commandments, statutes and judgments to Israel. My major contributions have also been in areas that contribute to nation building. These have included a Model of Economic Development and beneficial International Trade that is now generally accepted by all nations, and significant contributions to natural healing, preventing sickness and maintaining general good health. Contributions in both areas have had a very high impact on the prosperity and general well-being of our nations.

Information on my model of Economic Development and International Trade, My Experiments with Health, and my accomplishments in business is available free of charge at my web site www.ChurchofGodMessage.com.

10. The mark of a true prophet is prophesying future events or understanding and giving a correct interpretation of prophecy. Besides Jesus Christ no man has understood prophecy better than Mr. Armstrong. Daniel the prophet and John the apostle who wrote prophecies did not understand them because they were sealed till the time of the end. But when the end time came, understanding of prophecies was given to Mr. Armstrong. He explained what the various beasts in the books of Daniel and Revelation meant. After Mr. Armstrong, an understanding of the proper sequence of end time events was revealed to me. A key element of the sequence of end-time events was revealed by an angel in 1998 during the Feast of Tabernacles, an annual Church religious holy day, in Vail Colorado. Due to that revelations I have written my detailed booklet titled “World in Bible Prophecy.” I did not consult any one or rely on others’ writings to do so, as the sequence of events I have provided is different from that which was generally understood previously.

My main commission is stated in Revelation 10:11, “…"You must prophesy again about many peoples, nations, tongues, and kings." I have written books and booklets on prophecy in fulfillment of that commission, which are available free of charge at my web site www.ChurchofGodMessage.com.

11. Mr. Armstrong used to complain about not being able to get sufficient sleep. He also talked about contact with demons. Perhaps he realized that demons were buffeting him to keep him humble just as the apostle Paul had been buffeted by a messenger of Satan (2 Corinthians 12:7). A messenger of Satan would obviously be a demon. Peter may also have had a similar experience. That seems to be implied by Jesus’ statement in Luke 22:31: “…Simon, Simon, behold, Satan has desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.”

I too have battled a demonic messenger of Satan intensely for about 19 years. He still buffets me, but I am no longer physically troubled as I was before. It may simply be the mark of a prophet or leading apostle of God in the case of Mr. Armstrong, Paul and Peter.

12. Moses and Elijah communicated with the Lord. In our time prophets have not had the privilege of communicating directly with God. But angels have communicated many messages to me. That perhaps is also unique in our time within God’s Church. Angels in human form have helped people throughout history, but have not communicated God’s messages to prophets or apostle since the last communication with John the apostle, perhaps around 94 A.D. Then after 100-time cycles of 19 years each, God chose to communicate with human beings again through angels. I have not seen any of the angels, but they have communicated with him unambiguously. I have written a booklet to describe all these communications titled “God’s Messages Delivered Through Angels,” available free at my web site.

Many claim that God has communicated with them, but they cannot offer proof and people have to rely on their veracity. However, in my case God Almighty Himself offered proof. The very first message delivered to me in 1994 was that the Sainis of India are Jews. Then about 4 years later it was revealed to Queen Elizabeth II of the U.K. that I am also a descendant of King David, who was a Jew. The queen herself is a descendant of King David.

The question is, why did God choose to deliver these messages to me by angels and did not use that method of communication with Mr. Armstrong. Here are some possible reasons:

a) God built the Philadelphian era of His Church through the preaching of Mr. Armstrong. He was already an established leader of the Church and had no credibility problem. In my case, no body would believe that God would choose a man from India to be a prophet, least of all I, a lay member of the Church. The reason is that we all expect that a prophet would be an Israelite, and a high-ranking member of God’s Church, because Moses had written so in Deuteronomy 18. However, we considered all Indians to be non-Israelites. That’s why the very first message God delivered to me through an angel was that I am of Jewish, meaning Israelite, ancestry. Then God provided proof that He communicated with me through angels by using a person with the highest credibility in the world, Queen Elizabeth II of Britain, to let the world know that I was a descendant of King David. God chose this method of communication to establish me as a leader in His Church, and build my credibility.

b) We are living in the most dangerous time in the history of mankind, and the most treacherous time for God’s true Church still lies ahead. These are not the times God’s Church should navigate through, divided into many different organizations. God’s Church will have to flee to a place of safety in the near future. Perhaps God will use angels to convey lifesaving messages to His Church during these times.

There is a very important reason why God speaks through only one man in critical times. And there is no doubt that the time of the events leading to and through the Great Tribulation is going to be the most critical time in the history of mankind. At such a time, it is safest for God’s Church and God’s people Israel to look to one man for answers from God. Can you imagine members of God’s Church having to rely on the words of 4 or 5 leaders to make decisions about their safety during these treacherous times? We have already demonstrated through our different organizations after the splits from the Worldwide Church of God that differences can develop even among God’s own people despite everything having been restored by God by sending a special prophet and apostle to do so. And we have also demonstrated differences in understanding of prophecy. Such differences so close to the Great Tribulation can prove fatal, if members were to look to 4 or 5 different leaders for answers from God. In these critical times God wants His people to be sure through whom He will give His commands. That is why I believe sometime in the near future God’s Church will come together as one organization with only one man in charge. God may choose to communicate His messages to that man through angels. Perhaps God is demonstrating to whom He will communicate His messages.

c) Satan has always had false prophets opposing God’s true prophets in critical times. This happened in Jeremiah’s time. It will happen even in our times because Jesus Christ said in Matthew 24:11, “11 Then many false prophets will rise up and deceive many.” There are still plenty of tares among the leadership in God’s Churches. Any of them could arise as false prophets and claim they have received messages from God and try to lead genuine members astray. Perhaps this is another reason why God chose to communicate with me through angels so that genuine members can recognize who the false prophets are when they arise.

13. Just as God revealed to the world that I had been called to fulfill the role of a prophet, it was revealed to the world that I had also been given the status of a king. I do not know exactly how this was revealed to people, but my guess is that some saw me crowned as a king when they looked at me, or saw it in a dream, or in a vision.

The status of a King is necessary because of the commission I have been called to fulfill, which as mentioned earlier is stated in Revelation 10:11, “…"You must prophesy again about many peoples, nations, tongues, and kings." If I am being called on to prophesy about kings, then as their equal, I must have the status of a king.

God’s Church is called God’s holy nation in 1 Peter 2:9, “9 But you are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that you should show forth the praises of him who has called you out of darkness into his marvelous light.” I believe that I have been given the status of a king of God’s holy nation so that I can talk to kings of the world’s nations as an equal, and criticize their actions respectfully if need be, as an equal.

Thus, God has provided proof in many different ways that someone is fulfilling the role of the prophet like Moses that God would send as prophesied by Moses in Deuteronomy 18:15-19.

***Seventh Resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire***

There are other prophecies being fulfilled right now.

As already mentioned, the Roman Empire was to be resurrected 10 times, the initial three resurrections being plucked up by the roots by the little horn in Daniel 7, which we have identified as the Pope of the Roman Church. The last seven resurrections would take place with the blessings of the Pope. The Roman Empire would then be called the Holy Roman Empire.

Six resurrections are already past. The seventh resurrection is a union of ten rulers ruling over ten territories or nations in Europe. We already see such a union in Europe, called the European Union. Thus, we see the seventh resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire already taking shape in Europe.

However, God also prophesied the rise of the great false Church that would persecute the true saints, meaning members of God’s true Church. This is prophesied in Revelation 17:6, “6 And I saw the woman drunken with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus.”

Revelation 13:11 is also a prophecy about this spiritual leader that adds another characteristic of his leadership: “11 And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb, and he spoke as a dragon” [or Satan]. A horn is a symbol for a king in prophecy. This religious leader wears two crowns. Only one religious leader on earth does that. The pope is the head of the Roman Church and also is the head of a state, the Vatican State, which sends and receives ambassadors like any state.

The rise of this great false Church was also prophesied through Daniel the prophet. Its leader is the little horn of Daniel 7:21, 25, “21 I beheld, and the same horn made war with the saints, and prevailed against them…24 And the ten horns out of this kingdom are ten kings that shall arise: and another shall rise after them; and he shall be diverse from the first, and he shall subdue three kings. 25 And he shall speak great words against the Most High and shall wear out the saints of the most High, and think to change times and laws: and they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of time.”

The Book of Revelation was given around 94 A.D. and Daniel’s prophecy in Daniel 7 was given around 550 BCE. This Church was still barely forming in 94 A.D. No one could have predicted the greatness the false Church of Rome would achieve in the future. But God foretold its rise and what it would do very accurately. It has persecuted to death all those opposed to its religion. This Church demands Sunday worship. But God’s true Church worships on the Sabbath day. That’s why the Roman Church has murdered hundreds of thousands or perhaps millions of true Church of God members over the past centuries. Thus, prophecies concerning the false Roman Church are still being fulfilled today.

The numerous prophecies fulfilled in the past, many prophecies given thousands of years ago still being fulfilled, and prophecies for our time having already been fulfilled or still being fulfilled before our eyes should convince any rational human being that the God of the Bible has provided ample evidence that He is the true God; and the only God. There is no other god. The holy books of all other religions have failed this test miserably and are the writings of men, or inspired by the devil himself to lead humanity astray and hide God’s true potential for humanity.

**CHAPTER 15**

**HAS THE BIBLE BEEN ALTERED**

We have seen from fulfillment of numerous prophesied events in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible that its words are backed by the power of Almighty God. But does it mean that all its words are the true words of God so that we can believe what it offers us as salvation, and we can safely follow all its instructions on how to live our lives?

The scriptures of other religions do not mention the Bible or Christianity, but the scripture of one of them boldly dares to state that the words of the Bible were altered and the version we now have is not the original inspired word. And that religion is Islam and their holy book the Koran. However, we have already proved that the so-called holy books of all religions except the Bible are not backed by the power of Almighty God, because they fail our test of foretelling numerous great events in human affairs and bringing them to pass in precise detail. The holy books of all other religions are mere philosophies of men or they are outright lies inspired by wicked spirits.

What else can we expect from a religion that is based on lies? Simply more lies to cast doubts in the minds of the gullible about the true religion and the true holy book. Just as Hinduism, Sikhism, and all the other isms are philosophies of men, Islam is a colossal lie. But it is the worst of all lies because it dares to directly attack the Bible which we have proved to be backed by the power of Almighty God. Since the Koran was revealed to Mohammad by a spirit being, that spirit being, who is none other than Satan the devil, or a demon representing Satan, is a liar. Only a diabolical lying spirit would seek with all his cunning craftiness to discredit the Bible to turn humanity away from the Almighty God and His truth.

***General Muslim Views and Disagreements with Christianity***

Islam has certain beliefs about their prophet Mohammad and the Koran. They also have certain beliefs about God, Jesus Christ, the Trinity, other prophets in the Bible, Christianity, Judaism and the Bible itself. Some of these major beliefs include:

1) Muslims regard the Bible as a holy scripture. But they believe that the Bible as we have it today has been corrupted, but not completely. So it still contains some truth. Muslims are willing to accept parts of the Bible that do not contradict the Koran. They reject all other parts of the Bible that contradict the Koran.

2) Islam believes that there is only one God, the Creator and Sustainer of the universe. Islam also holds the view that Christianity believes in a Triune God that exists as the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit, which Islam rejects. God’s Church rejects both these views.

3) Since Islam believes there is only one God, therefore Jesus Christ cannot be divine, meaning that Jesus Christ was not God. Islam believes that Jesus Christ was a mere human being though a great one, and miraculously born to Mary without a human father as Adam and Eve were miraculously created directly by God. But the divinity of Jesus Christ is central to Christianity, because He could not have been the Savior of the world if He was not divine.

4) Islam believes that Jesus did not die on the cross, but God made it appear that way to people. Furthermore, since Jesus did not die on the cross, He was not resurrected. The Koran instead says that Jesus ascended to Heaven and did not die on the cross.

But fundamental to Christianity is the belief that Jesus was crucified and died on the cross to bear the sins of all of humanity and was resurrected. Mainstream Christianity believes that Jesus died on the cross on Friday late afternoon, was placed in the tomb but was resurrected on Sunday morning at sunrise. Islam finds that this view contradicts the Bible as Jesus said He would be 3 days and 3 nights in the tomb. Three days and three nights cannot be fitted between a Friday crucifixion and death and Sunday resurrection at sunrise. Islam is right on this one. But mainstream Christianity’s belief in a Friday afternoon crucifixion and Sunday morning resurrection is not based on the Bible but has been incorporated into Christianity from pagan customs and traditions foisted on Christianity by the false Roman Church.

5) Islam believes that God sent prophets of the Old Testament in the Bible, and Jesus Christ and the prophet Mohammad. But Christianity rejects Mohammad as a prophet of God. Since we have proved that the words of the Koran are not backed by the power of Almighty God as it has utterly failed to provide proof of many prophetic predictions in the affairs of mankind and then bringing them to pass, Mohammad therefore cannot be a prophet of God. He was simply a deceived human being, deceived by a demon masquerading around as the archangel Gabriel.

Prophets either foretell the future or interpret prophecies of the future. Mohammad did no such thing. That’s why Christians and Jews are right in rejecting Mohammad as a prophet of the true God.

Muslim writers provide evidence for their beliefs about Christianity and the Bible by taking a scripture here and there (often out of context) to prove a point while totally ignoring all other scriptures related to that topic.

Scriptures taken in isolation, out of their context can be used to prove many different things. But that is not truth as that belief would directly contradict many other plain scriptures. And citing the writings of so-called Christian writers is not necessarily proof because such authorities may not believe true Christianity. They may be believers and practitioners of the lies and paganism originated and propagated by the great false Church based in Rome and its protesting daughters.

The correct way to research a topic is to study all the scriptures on the topic and then form one’s belief that is compatible with all the scriptures. We would counsel Muslims to do a diligent study of various subjects rather than simply accepting conclusions that a writer may have drawn based on twisting of select scriptures considered in isolation. A seeker after the truth must prove all things, for these are issues that concern his or her eternal life. Keep an open mind and ask the only true God to guide your understanding to enable you to prove all things for yourself.

Let’s now examine each of the beliefs that Muslims hold about Christianity, Judaism and the Bible.

***Was the Bible Altered***

The Koran states that the Jews altered the scriptures.

[2.75]: Do you then hope that they [the Jews] would believe in you, and a party from among them indeed used to hear the Word of Allah, then altered it after they had understood it, and they know (this).

[3.78]: Most surely there is a party amongst those who distort the Book with their tongue that you may consider it to be (a part) of the Book, and they say, It is from Allah, while it is not from Allah, and they tell a lie against Allah whilst they know.

Both verses allude to the Jews having altered the Scriptures, and many in Islam interpret these verses this way to justify their beliefs that are contrary to the Bible.

Again, why should we believe these verses in the Koran? We have proved that the words of the Koran have not been inspired or backed by the power of Almighty God. Since the salvation offered by Islam differs from the salvation offered in the Bible, and we have proved the words of the Bible to be backed by the power of Almighty God, the words in the Koran therefore stand proved as lies. The charge that the Jews altered their scriptures is just another pack of lies written in the Koran. The lies in Koran are designed to turn Islamic nations into enemies of Israelite nations of America, British Commonwealth nations and the Jews by portraying them as liars, hence inferior humans.

***Allah Claims He Deceived the Jews***

In Sura 4:157-158 in the Koran Allah of Islam said: “…they [the Jews] did not kill him nor did they crucify him, but it appeared to them so they killed him not for sure. 158 Nay! Allah took him up to Himself”.

Yusuf Ali’s translation renders the words “but it appeared to them so” as “so it was made to appear to them.” This is also how Muslims interpret this passage. They say that Allah made it appear to the Jews and others who witnessed the event that Jesus was crucified and died on the cross. But He was not actually crucified and did not die because Allah made Him ascend to himself.

Why would Allah feel the need to deceive the Jews into seeing Jesus crucified and dying on the cross, but actually take Him off to ascend to himself? Why would Allah need to deceive anybody? Allah in this verse in the Koran thus claims he is a deceiver. That actually is the truth. In contrast to the God of the Bible who cannot lie, the Allah of Islam actually claims in Sura 4:157-158 that he deceived the Jews [this is how Muslims interpret these verses] into believing that Jesus was crucified and died on the cross when he actually made Him ascend to himself. The Allah of Islam thus stands exposed as a deceiver. In truth he is deceiving his Muslim followers with his lies in the Koran.

It is tragic that Muslims are willing to accept one mere statement in the Koran in Sura 4:157-158 that Jesus was not crucified and did not die on the cross. They need to critically examine the evidence for the crucifixion and death of Jesus Christ and reject the lies in the Koran as told to Mohammed by a lying demon masquerading as the archangel Gabriel. The one who masquerades around as the Allah of Islam is none other than Satan the devil.

How can we prove that the entire Bible as we have it today is indeed inspired by the great Creator God? Whose words can we accept as truth? Certainly, we can accept the words of the true prophets of God which Islam acknowledges as prophets. Islam acknowledges Jesus Christ as a true prophet of God. We should certainly be able to accept the words of Jesus Christ about the Old Testament as truth. They know that Jesus Christ would not lie.

As already discussed earlier, Jesus said in John 17:17: “…your word is truth.” So, Jesus emphatically said that God’s word, the Old Testament in the Bible (which is what was available as scripture when Jesus Christ was alive) is the truth.

Jesus also said in Matthew 5:17-18: “Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill. For verily [or assuredly] I say unto you, till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle [the equivalent of a fullstop or a coma as punctuation marks] shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.” Here Jesus was saying that everything written in the Old Testament, including punctuation marks, will be fulfilled. Therefore, it is the truth backed by Almighty God.

Jesus also said in John 10:35: “If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken.” Here Jesus was saying that the scriptures cannot be broken, meaning that the scriptures are infallible. By the time of Jesus, the Old Testament scriptures had been written and preserved for a time period varying from more than 1450 years when Moses delivered his first 5 books of the Bible to about 450 years since Malachi the prophet wrote his book. Jesus thus confirmed that the Old Testament had been faithfully preserved by the Jews till His time. Thus, Allah of Islam stands exposed as a liar by contradicting the words of Jesus about the Bible.

***How Was the Bible Written and Preserved***

Another important question for us to consider is: How was the Bible written and preserved for us through thousands of years?

Romans 3:1-2 states: “1 What advantage then has the Jew? or what profit is there of circumcision? 2 Much every way: chiefly, because that unto them were committed the oracles of God.”

These verses say that God gave the Jews the responsibility of preserving the oracles of God. Oracles means “all the written utterances of God through the Old Testament writers.” Note that God said the Jews were responsible for the preservation of the Bible, not the interpretation of it. In the New Testament, Christ often rejected the Jews’ interpretations. After His death, the elders met together and used God’s Holy Spirit to make judgments as described in the apostles’ conference in Acts 15 to discuss the circumcision question.

Did the Jews faithfully preserve the Old Testament? Matthew 5:18 says so. It says: “For verily [or truly] I say unto you, till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.” Jesus said even the equivalent of every comma and full stop in the Bible shall stand. That means the Jews did faithfully preserve the Old Testament.

The Jewish scribes were extremely careful and reverent in preserving the Bible. If they found even one error in a copy from the original, the copy was burnt rather than corrections being made to it. They also kept statistics such as identifying the total number of words in various books, the middle words, and the total words in the whole Old Testament and the middle words etc. so as to provide another way to verify no changes crept in from the original text.

*Old Testament Canonization*

Now let us take a brief look at how the Old Testament of the Bible was canonized.

Moses wrote the first five books, called the Law in Deuteronomy 31:9. 24-26. Kings of Israel and Judah were to write personal copies of the law as stated in Deuteronomy 17:14, 18. So kings were involved in the preservation of the Scriptures.

Prophets, including Samuel, Nathan, and Gad also wrote parts of the Old Testament, as I Samuel 10:25 and I Chronicles 29:29 mention. King David wrote many of the psalms, specially the first 72 of them. King Solomon wrote the Book of Ecclesiastes (Ecclesiastes 1:1), the Song of Solomon (1.1) and most of the book of Proverbs (1.1; Ecclesiastes 12:9-11). King Hezekiah appears to have overseen the collection and preservation of some of the books as Proverbs 25:1states.

Jeremiah wrote the Book of Lamentations on the death of Josiah as 2 Chronicles 35:24-25 mentions.

Ezra and Nehemiah probably did the final editing, adding observations such as Deuteronomy 34:10 which says that a prophet like Moses had not arisen in Israel. Names of towns and cities change over time. So more modern names were used by the editors than what the original authors wrote.

*New Testament Canonization*

In Matthew 24:35 Jesus Christ said, “My words will by no means pass away.” If Jesus Christ’s words were not to pass away, how could they be preserved? There are limitations to passing His words on orally. They get distorted. The best way to preserve Jesus’ words was to write them down.

Matthew 28:19-20 says converts to Christianity were to be taught to observe ALL THINGS Jesus had commanded. Some say that Paul’s doctrine superseded all other apostles’ doctrine. But Acts 2:42 refutes this idea. It says the Church “continued steadfastly in the apostles’ doctrine and fellowship. The apostles here include the 12 disciples of Jesus Christ who became apostles

The gospels were written in the mid-60s but were already considered scripture by Paul. For proof, see Luke 10:7. It states: “And in the same house remain, eating and drinking such things as they give: for the laborer is worthy of his hire.” Now compare with I Timothy 5:18: “For the scripture says, You shall not muzzle the ox that treads out the corn. And, the laborer is worthy of his hire [or reward.] The phrase ‘the laborer is worthy of his hire’ is not written in the Old Testament. It is found in Luke 10:7, but Paul is already considering and quoting the gospel of Luke in I Timothy 5:18 as scripture. This proves that the gospels were considered scripture.

In 2 Peter 1:12, 15, Peter said he wrote his epistles so that people would have a “reminder” of things after his death. He knew that he was writing scripture and that it would be preserved as such for all Christians afterwards. The reminder of things comes to us from Peter’s writings.

2 Peter 3:15-16 says people twisted Paul’s writings as they did the rest of the scriptures. Here Peter is already equating Paul’s writings with Scripture.

In 2 Timothy 4:11-13 Paul asked timothy to bring the “books”, especially the “parchments”, indicating that he was compiling Scripture. So Paul and Peter were involved in writing the Scriptures and Paul compiled, or canonized them. The final book of the Bible was written by the apostle John. So, the final canonization of the New Testament was done by the apostle John. The canonization of the Old and New Testaments was not done by committees of scholars as critics claim.

The final editing of the Old Testament was done by Ezra and Nehemiah. Compilation of the New Testament was done by the Apostle Paul, with the final compilation being done by the apostle John.

God’s true Church does not recognize the Apocrypha as part of the canon for the following reasons. Firstly, Jesus and the writers of the New Testament never quoted from any of these books but did from almost all the other Old Testament books.

Secondly, the Jewish historian Josephus who lived from about 30 A.D. to 100 A.D. explicitly excludes them and says there were 22 books in the Old Testament. In the Jewish Old Testament count of 22 books all minor prophets are included as one book and the books of Samuel and Kings are included as one book. Thirdly, Jewish scholars of Jamnia in 90 A.D. did not recognize the Apocrypha. Finally, it wasn’t until A.D. 1546, in a polemical action at the Counter Reformation Council of Trent, that these books received full canonical status by the Catholic Church. Again, this was in 1546 A.D.

Jesus and the original apostles did not recognize the Apocrypha as scripture. God’s Church also does not consider any additional books such as the Koran or the Book of Mormon to be Scripture and equal with the Bible because: First, 2 Timothy 3:16-17 says that the Scriptures given by God in the bible are sufficient that the man of God may be complete, thoroughly equipped for every good work. Secondly, Revelation 22:18 says, “…If any man shall add to these things, God shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book.’ And finally, the books of Genesis and Revelation seem to be bookends for the rest of the Bible. According to the Companion Bible Appendix # 3, there are 30 parallels between these two books showing that the Bible is a whole, complete book.

In summary then according to Sidney Collett’s “*All About the Bible*”, 20th Edition, p. 11, “Altogether about 40 persons, in all stations of life, were engaged in the writing of these oracles, the work of which was spread over a period of about 1,600 years.” In spite of all these writers over hundreds of years, the Bible has a consistent plan throughout. Many have written against the Bible as God’s word. These types of arguments usually falsely claim that the Bible contradicts itself, that the people in the Bible didn’t really exist, and that the Jews wrote the book to enhance their national reputation.

Josh McDowell’s *Evidence that Demands a Verdict* has some quotes refuting this kind of thinking:

On p. 55-56 he says that 40 different kings are listed in correct order in the Old Testament. He says that the odds of that being right are incredible if the Bible were fraudulent. The chances are I in 75 followed by 22 zeros.

On page 58 he talks about the Dead Sea Scrolls. In these scrolls the Book of the prophet Isaiah is intact and dates to 125 B.C. Out of the 166 words in Isaiah 53, only 3 letters (one word) differ from the Masoretic text of A.D. 916. And he says on page 141 that Messianic prophecies in the Old Testament number in the 100s, showing the great need for a New Testament.

***Reliability of the Old Testament - importance of the Dead Sea Scrolls***

The Dead Sea Scrolls provide a glimpse of the amazing accuracy of the transmission of the text of the Old Testament through the millennia. The Dead Sea Scrolls are collectively composed of some 900 documents that contain, besides other religious literature, sections of the entire Hebrew Bible except for the book of Esther. The scrolls range in date from the third century B.C. to the first century A.D.

When these manuscripts were discovered in various caves of the northwestern region of the Dead Sea close to Qumran, a site most archaeologists believe was a community of Essene Jews, scholars wondered how many discrepancies would be found between them and the Old Testament text used for the translation of our modern Bibles, a text whose oldest copies date to the 10th century A.D. More than 1,000 years elapsed between the two versions. How well would they conform?

Incredibly, when the two versions were compared, researchers found that they uncannily matched—virtually word for word. For example, the Dead Sea Scroll containing the entire book of Isaiah, some 26 feet long, was compared to the 10th-century version of the Masoretic Text, which is the basis for our modern Old Testament. The researchers found it to match in virtually every instance.

Notes Bible scholar Gleason Archer: "Even though the two copies of Isaiah discovered in Qumran Cave 1 near the Dead Sea in 1947 were a thousand years earlier than the oldest dated manuscript previously known (A.D. 980), they proved to be word for word identical with our standard Hebrew Bible in more than 95 percent of the text. The 5 percent of variation consisted chiefly of obvious slips on the pen and variations in spelling…They do not affect the message of revelation in the slightest" (*A Survey of Old Testament Introduction*, 1974, p. 25).

This is the greatest contribution the Dead Sea Scrolls have made to biblical scholarship. They have confirmed the reliability of the Old Testament text we now possess in our Bibles. "Critical scholars," states Garry Brantley, "questioned the accuracy of the MT [Masoretic Text], which formed the basis of our English versions of the Old Testament, since there was such a large chronological gap between it and the autographs [original documents]. Because of this uncertainty, scholars often 'corrected' the text with considerable freedom.

"Qumran, however, has provided remains of an early Masoretic edition predating the Christian era on which the traditional MT [Masoretic Text] is based. A comparison of the [Masoretic Text] to this earlier text revealed the remarkable accuracy with which scribes copied the sacred texts. Accordingly, the integrity of the Hebrew Bible was confirmed, which generally has heightened its respect among scholars and drastically reduced textual alteration" ("The Dead Sea Scrolls and Biblical Integrity," *Reason & Revelation online journal*, April 1995, ApologeticsPress.org).

In fact, the Masoretic Text we possess today has been found to be more carefully transmitted than the Dead Sea Scrolls version! When compared, the largest Isaiah Dead Sea Scroll was found to have more spelling errors—and this is generally the case when comparing the Masoretic Text and the Dead Sea Scrolls.

***Reliability of the New Testament***

What about the New Testament text? How accurate is it?

First consider the number of New Testament manuscripts available today in whole or in part as compared to the number of manuscripts of the classical Greek and Roman writers. The late F. F. Bruce, professor of theology at the University of Manchester, stated about the number of manuscripts available for ancient historical works:

For Caesar’s Gallic War (composed between 58 and 50 BC) there are several extant MSS [manuscripts], but only nine or ten are good, and the oldest is some 900 years later than Caesar’s day. Of the 142 books of the Roman History of Livy (59 BC – AD 17) only thirty-five survive, these are known to us from not more than twenty MSS of any consequence, only one of which, and that containing fragments of Books iii-vi, is as old as the fourth century. Of the fourteen books of the Histories of Tacitus (c. AD 100) only four and a half survive; of the sixteen books of his Annals, ten survive in full and two in part. The text of these extant portions of his two great historical works depend entirely on two MSS, one of the ninth century and one of the eleventh. The extant MSS of his minor works Dialogus de Oratoribus, Agricola, Germania all descend from a codex of the tenth century. The History of Thucydides (c. 460-400 BC) is known to us from eight MSS, the earliest belonging to AD 900, and a few papyrus scraps, belonging to about the beginning of the Christian era. The same is true of the History of Herodotus (c. 480-425 BC).

We are talking here about no more than 2 to 20 manuscripts surviving today of all these classical works, the earliest being dated more than 1,300 years after the original manuscripts were penned. Yet no classical scholar would listen to an argument that the authenticity of Herodotus or Thucydides is in doubt because the earliest MSS of their works which are of any use to us are over 1,300 years later than the originals (1960, 15-17).

Compare the number of manuscripts of these classical works surviving to the available surviving manuscripts, whole or in fragments of the New Testament. More than 5,300 Greek manuscripts survive today. Some of these ancient manuscripts date from just decades or just a century from the end of the New Testament canon by John the Apostle in the early to mid-90s A.D. Then besides the 5,300 Greek manuscripts there are tens of thousands of manuscripts of the earliest translations of the Bible. With all this mountain of evidence for the New Testament writings, in the words of Professor F.F. Bruce: “…if the New Testament were a collection of secular writings, their authenticity would generally be regarded as beyond all doubt.”

But there has been no book or writing whose authenticity has been more questioned and critically examined than the Bible. With the mountain of evidence supporting the authenticity of the New Testament as compared to the classical ancient Greek and Roman works, secular historians, not theologians, but historians have been much more willing to accept the authenticity of the New Testament. Most of those less ready to accept the authenticity of the New Testament have been theologians. That should give us a clue. These theologians have an agenda, which is to turn people away from the only true God and His instructional manual for mankind, the Holy Bible. That is their main business: to endlessly invent arguments in order to deceive people into believing that the Bible is inaccurate, and hence not God’s word; just as the theory of evolution has been beaten to dust, but its advocates still continue to spew forth trash on a daily basis in order to deceive humans.

Because of the never-ending criticism of these masquerading [people of German origin living in different countries and assuming the names of the native citizens of the countries] theologians, genuine Bible scholars have been forced to examine the evidence for the authenticity of the New Testament over the past century or so. They have done a stellar job of nailing the lies and accusations of these masquerading theologians. In the process our understanding of God’s word and the mind of God have been immensely enriched.

Here then is the opinion of genuine honest scholars of the New Testament. From the thousands of ancient copies or portions of copies known, 98 percent of the New Testament texts agree. The variations that do exist are mostly spelling errors or scribal additions that are easily discarded.

Here is how Wayne Jackson writing for the *Christian Courier* summarizes this evidence:

“The accumulation of manuscript evidence has been so vast and the work of the scientific textual critic so precise, that we may express complete confidence in the reliability of the New Testament text. While it is true that some minor manuscript variations exist, they are negligible.

“Westcott and Hort felt that the significantly debatable portions of the New Testament text could hardly amount to more than a thousandth part of the whole—the equivalent of a little more than half a page in the Greek New Testament (as stated in Henry C. Thiessen in *Introduction to the New Testament*; 1955, 77).

“Let me emphasize how impressive this fact really is. The New Testament documents have been in existence almost nineteen hundred years. For fifteen of these centuries they were replicated solely by hand. In spite of this, there are only some twelve to twenty significant textual variations in the entire New Testament, and none of these affect an important doctrinal matter.

“On the other hand, consider the works of William Shakespeare. These writings have existed less than four centuries (and since the invention of the printing press) and yet: [I]n every one of Shakespeare’s thirty-seven plays there are probably a hundred readings still in dispute, a large number of which materially affect the meaning of the passages in which they occur” (H.L. Hastings in *The Corruption of the New Testament. A Square Talk About the Inspiration of the Bible*. Boston, MA: H. L. Hastings, 1890, 13).

As the great text scholar Sir Frederic Kenyon noted after examining both the Old and New Testament texts (and it holds true even more so today), "The Christian can take the whole Bible in his hand and say without fear or hesitation that he holds in it the true word of God, handed down without essential loss from generation to generation throughout the centuries" (*Our Bible and Ancient Manuscripts*, 1939, p. 23).

*Two Types of Errors*

Two types or errors in transmission of texts can occur. One is the errors of transmission in the original languages; and the second is the errors in translations. The errors in translations can be easily examined and discarded by referring to the reliable texts in the original languages. One example of such an error is in Acts 12:4: “4 And when he [Herod] had apprehended him [Peter], he put him in prison, and delivered him to four quaternions of soldiers to keep him; intending after Easter to bring him forth to the people.” In this verse the word translated Easter is pascha, which no scholar disputes that it should be translated Passover. So “Easter” is a mistranslation. Genuine scholars can easily identify such errors from the original Greek texts and discard them. Many modern translations have already corrected this error.

Second type of error is variations in the transmission of the text through the centuries in scribal errors or spelling mistakes. We have examined the evidence for these types of errors and the evidence shows that there are no material errors that affect doctrine. Spelling errors can be easily discarded.

One such error is found in 1 John 5:7-8: “7 For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. 8 And there are three that bear witness in earth, the Spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these three agree in one.” These verses are often cited in support of the Trinity doctrine.

The words “in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. 8 And there are three that bear witness in earth…” are a spurious addition to the inspired text.

Here is what Dr. Norman Geisler and Thomas Howe state about these verses in *The Big Book of Bible Difficulties* (2008, pp.540-541): "This verse has virtually no support among the early Greek manuscripts…Its appearance in late Greek manuscripts is based on the fact that Erasmus was placed under ecclesiastical pressure to include it in his Greek NT of 1522, having omitted it in his two earlier editions of 1516 and 1519 because he could not find any Greek manuscripts which contained it."

Theology professors Anthony and Richard Hanson, in their book *Reasonable Belief: A Survey of the Christian Faith*, explain the unwarranted addition to the text this way: "It was added by some enterprising person or persons in the ancient Church who felt that the New Testament was sadly deficient in direct witness to the kind of doctrine of the Trinity which he favored and who determined to remedy that defect…It is a waste of time to attempt to read Trinitarian doctrine directly off the pages of the New Testament" (1980, p. 171).

The inspired words of 1 John 5:7-8 in hundreds of the oldest Greek texts and now correct in many modern translations should read: "In fact there are three witnesses, the Spirit, the water, and the blood; and these three are in agreement" (Revised English Bible). These words refer to the witness of Jesus Christ being the Son of God and salvation possibly only through water baptism, acceptance of the sacrifice and blood of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of one’s sins, and then receiving the gift of God’s holy spirit to live a Christian life of overcoming sin.

What is the lesson in all this for humanity! The masquerading theologians with all their Satan inspired diabolical cunning have questioned the authenticity of the Bible in every possible way. Genuine theologians have been led as a result to critically examine every aspect of the Bible themselves. They have compared the transmission of the Hebrew, Aramaic and Greek texts, and have critically examined the translated texts.

They have determined that most of the errors are obvious spelling errors and other slips of the pen which can be easily discarded. The remaining minor variations in the Old Testament texts do not affect the message at all. In the New Testament, after spelling and other obvious errors are discarded, the variations in question in the original Greek Texts amount to no more than half a page in the entire Bible. And these variations do not affect any doctrine at all. These mistranslations and spurious additions have been identified, critically examined and commented on. That is why genuine Bible scholars have concluded time and time again as quoted earlier: “The Christian can take the whole Bible in his hand and say without fear or hesitation that he holds in it the true word of God, handed down without essential loss from generation to generation throughout the centuries."

**CHAPTER 16**

**BIBLE AND ARCHAEOLOGY, ASTRONOMY AND MEDICINE**

The authenticity of the Bible has been questioned in many other ways. Here are other ways the critics have been proven wrong.

***Bible and Archaeology***

Many critics questioned the existence of empires such as the great Assyrian Empire, and individuals mentioned in the Bible. But the spade of archaeology has proved the accuracy of the Bible and its historical details. Archaeology proved the existence of the mighty Assyrian Empire and its capital Nineveh, existence of ancient Israel and its interactions with Egypt, existence of Bible personalities like Kings David, Ahab, Hezekiah, Manasseh, Jehu, Omri, Josiah, Uzziah, Zedekiah, many other kings and officials of Judah, Israel, ancient Assyria, Babylon and Persia. In addition, the existence of many New Testament personalities such as Anna the high priest, Caiaphas the high priest, Pontius Pilate, Herod the Great, Sergius Paulus and emperors of Rome has also been confirmed by archaeology.

The only conclusion we can draw can be stated in the words of archaeologist Nelson Glueck: "It may be stated categorically that no archaeological discovery has ever controverted a Biblical reference. Scores of archaeological findings have been made which confirm in clear outline or in exact detail historical statements in the Bible. And, by the same token, proper valuation of Biblical descriptions has often led to amazing discoveries" (*Rivers in the Desert: A History of the Negev*, 1959, p. 31).

***Bible and Astronomy***

A further proof of divine inspiration of the Bible is that it is in perfect harmony with the observations of astronomy. Theologians had endorsed the treatise by the sixth-century monk Cosmas...who...held that the world was a flat, rectangular plane...(William Manchester, *A World Lit Only by Fire*, 1993, p. 89"). But through observations and the use of mathematical tables, Polish astronomer Nicolaus Copernicus concluded that the earth is not a disk about which the sun rotates; rather it is a sphere revolving around the sun.

But the Bible had given an accurate description of the earth thousands of years before Copernicus’ discovery. In the oldest book in the Bible, about 3,600 – 3,700 years ago Job wrote: “He [meaning God] hangs the earth on nothing.” This was written thousands of years before astronomer and physicist Isaac Newton discovered the invisible laws of gravity that showed the earth truly is suspended "on nothing." Job knew this more than 3,600 years ago.

Some accuse biblical authors of believing in a flat earth because of the references to the "four corners" of the earth in Isaiah 11:12 and Revelation 20:8. But this is an expression that simply designates the four points of the compass. When we use the expression “four corners of the earth” today, we DO mean going north, south, east and west to gather information or search for something.

About 2,700 years ago, the prophet Isaiah wrote in Isaiah 40:22 that God "sits above the circle of the earth," showing that the earth was round. By using the expression “four corners of the earth” in Isaiah 11:12, the prophet was not implying that the earth is a flat rectangular plane.

***Bible and Medicine***

Further proof of the divine inspiration of the Bible is that it is thousands of years ahead of modern medicine. Research conducted by doctors of medicine and nutrition has provided many examples from instructions on prevention of disease and controlling infection, written by Moses more than 3,500 years ago, which if obeyed would have saved millions of lives from dread plagues.

During the time of Moses, Egyptian medical practices such as applying a salve of worm blood and donkey dung resulted in a gruesome death from lockjaw, rather than curing the wound. Egyptians believed that illness was caused by evil spirits. That’s why they often used “magical” cures to treat illness. Moses was familiar with all this ‘wisdom’ of the Egyptians but included none of such cures in the Bible. Instead God through Moses provided instructions for preventing and stopping epidemics through cleanliness and hygiene.

For example, cholera spreads through the fecal matter of cholera victims. But God instructed Israelites in Deuteronomy 23:12-13 to bury or dispose off raw human sewage in order to prevent humans and animals from direct contact with it. This could have prevented all the cholera pandemics of the early 1800s. In addition, avoiding the practice of throwing garbage and sewage in the streets would have prevented the bubonic, pneumonic and septicemic plagues or the Black Death which destroyed one fourth of Europe’s population. The Jewish population avoided contracting these dread diseases because they practiced cleanliness as instructed in the Bible.

The simple instruction in Numbers 19:12-13 to not come into contact with another human being for 7 days after touching a corpse and to bathe at least twice in that period would have prevented all the deaths among pregnant women in 19th century Vienna. The simple example of the Good Samaritan in applying wine and olive oil to wounds would have prevented more than 50% of the deaths of soldiers in the American Civil wars. The reason is that the mixture of wine and oil acts as a disinfectant.

Doctors of medicine and medical researchers have also concluded that the dietary laws in Leviticus 11-15 protected Israel from bad diet, dangerous germs and vermin, and communicable diseases.

Only in the past 50 years has medicine discovered that animal fat is not good for us. Also, blood of the animal carries all the germs in the body. But the Bible prohibited eating animal blood more than 4,300 years ago in Genesis 9:4 and animal fat about 3,500 years ago through Moses in Leviticus 3:17.

Doctors of medicine and nutritionists have also commented on the lists of clean and unclean meats in Leviticus 11 and Deuteronomy 14. United Church of God booklet titled “*Is the Bible true*?” notes:

“Dr. Russell asks, "What is so good about 'clean' meats, and what is so bad about 'unclean' meats?" He explains that "the flesh of clean animals such as beef, and fish that have scales and fins, is ideal for the health of humans—just as we would expect from the hand of a loving Creator...Many land animals God designed for food provide an additional benefit in that they generally eat grasses and grains that were also designed for food" (Russell, *What the Bible Says About Healthy Living*, 1999, pp. 73-74).

“In contrast, David Meinz summarizes the potential health risk of eating creatures the Bible classifies as unclean. "Almost all of the creatures on the unclean list are scavengers," he notes. "In many cases they don't hunt for their own food; they eat the dead and decaying matter of our environment. A catfish does that at the bottom of a pond; lobsters and shrimp do it in the ocean. A pig will eat anything. Vultures, almost by definition, are known for their scavenger habits" (Meinz, *Eating by the Book*, 1999 p. 225).

Dr. Russell notes that "the differences between clean and unclean animals appear to be related to their primary food source and to their digestive systems. Scavengers that eat anything and everything are not suitable for food, according to the Bible. Animals described as clean, and therefore good for food, primarily eat grasses and grains.

"... [But] note that an animal doesn't have to be a scavenger to be unclean. Horses and rabbits, for example, are unclean because they do not have split hooves. Although they are considered to be good food in some countries, studies have shown that horse meat often contains viruses and parasites. Rabbits, as innocent as they appear, are the cause of tularemia (an infectious disease) in humans.

"One reason for God's rule forbidding pork is that the digestive system of a pig is completely different from that of a cow. It is similar to ours, in that the stomach is very acidic. Pigs are gluttonous, never knowing when to stop eating. Their stomach acids become diluted because of the volume of food, allowing all kinds of vermin to pass through this protective barrier. Parasites, bacteria, viruses and toxins can pass into the pig's flesh because of over-eating. These toxins and infectious agents can be passed on to humans when they eat a pig's flesh" (Russell, pp. 76-77).

Don Colbert, M.D., adds: "Besides being gluttons, swine are also extremely filthy animals. They will eat garbage, feces, and even decaying flesh. All that is eaten usually becomes part of the pig's own flesh...Aside from the diseases routinely carried by swine, pork is also a very fatty meat. The toxins in pork are held especially in the fat, which is not isolated from the meat as can be the case in lean beef, but rather, it is dispersed throughout the meat" (*What Would Jesus Eat?* 2002, pp. 49-50).

The Bible contains many instructions on sexual purity. If sex was restricted to monogamous relationships always within the context of marriage as the Bible instructs, humanity would avoid all the scourges of Sexually Transmissible Diseases (STDs) and prolonged emotional pain and suffering. Children as innocent victims of broken marriages and relationships would also be spared the suffering

.

The Bible also declares the virtues of a positive attitude in the proverbs of Solomon and other places and that “a merry heart [meaning laughter] does good like medicine.” Researchers have confirmed that laughter reduces the risk of cardiovascular disease, and that depression increases the risk of dying from heart failure.

Do the health laws of the Bible have a foundation in medical fact? Rex Russell, M.D., writes: "As we look at modern science and nutrition, we will find that...there is an amazing overlap between God's original laws of clean and unclean and solid hygienic principles...Scripture and medical research agree that modern lifestyles lived without reference to God's laws and design shorten life and hasten death" (*What the Bible Says About Healthy Living*, 1999, pp. 14, 16).

All these discoveries of science were written in the Bible as sound advice for human health and well-being more than 2,000 to 4,300 years ago. Thus, science has only proved that the Bible is scientifically accurate and has been thousands of years ahead of our time as a reliable guide for human living. Science, archaeology and observations of astronomy only confirm what fulfilled prophecy has proved that ALL the words of the Bible are inspired by the only true Creator God.

To research this subject thoroughly, please refer to the United Church of God booklet titled “*Is the Bible True*?” available free of charge at www.ucg.org.

**CHAPTER 17**

**HARMFUL PHILOSOPHIES OF VARIOUS RELIGIONS**

Since the Bible is inspired by the supreme Creator God, we would expect it to be an instruction manual for all aspects of human living. And that is exactly what we find. The Bible is the foundation of knowledge, but not all knowledge. God expects us to build on that foundation.

About one third of the Bible is history. Another one third contains instructions on how to live for individuals as well as laws for orderly governing of society within nations. It basically contains a foundational constitution by which a nation should be governed. Then about another one third of the Bible contains prophecy. Prophecy enabled us to prove that the Bible is indeed the true inspired word of the Creator.

The Bible has precise, compact and yet comprehensive instructions in the form of the Ten Commandments on how individuals should live. No other religion has such precise instructions. One has to read through hundreds of pages of other religions to develop one’s own instructions on how that religion wants its adherents to live. In addition, the Bible contains statutes and judgments on how the Law should be applied and justice administered within the nation. Other religions contain no such statutes and judgments. Islam contains instructions which are destructive to society, which will be discussed shortly.

Without such clear instructions one is not able to decide what is good and what is evil. That is why one sees more lawlessness among adherents of other religions than nations that follow Christianity. There is more rule of law among Christian nations than other nations. Only recently the existence of the hostile nation consisting of German masqueraders in Christian nations has changed that because these masqueraders under Satan’s guidance have tried their best to seduce Christian nations away from the rule of Law. They themselves are lawless.

Details of the lives of great heroes of the Bible in its history portion and God’s words through the prophets give us examples on how to apply God’s instructions in our lives. We can find many precedents in the Bible on how we should act when faced with certain circumstances. Other religions do not contain similar historical information, and certainly not in as comprehensive a manner as does the Bible. Thus, we see that the Bible is a much superior and complete instruction manual than the holy books of any other religion.

Here are some opinions of some famous men about the Bible, based on their life experiences:

Sir Isaac Newton, one of the most brilliant scientific minds of his century, commented, "There are more sure marks of authenticity in the Bible than in any profane history." First U.S. president George Washington said, "It is impossible to govern the world without God and the Bible." Here is U.S. president Andrew Jackson’s view: "That book, sir, is the rock on which our republic stands." Britain's Queen Victoria observed, "That book accounts for the supremacy of England." France's Emperor Napoleon commented, "The Bible is no mere book, but a Living Creature, with a power that conquers all who oppose it" (Halley's Bible Handbook, pp. 18–19).

In contrast to the Bible, we have concluded that the words in the holy books of all other religions are inspired by the diabolically evil Satan the devil either directly as in the case of Islam and Hinduism, or indirectly as in Sikhism. Therefore, we should find not beneficial but harmful instructions in them on how to live. We will not go into a detailed analysis of all the instructions contained in the holy books of other religions on how to live. It is not necessary since they are all religions originated by the devil one way or another, in order to deceive humanity. Why waste time critically analyzing books that are not the word of God, but rather use all diligent effort to analyze and dissect the true word of God and strive mightily to live by it. But a few damaging instructions will now be pointed out in the holy books of Islam, Hinduism and Sikhism for illustrative purposes.

***Reason to Reject False Religions***

Since we have proved that the Bible is the only inspired word of God, that means the salvation offered in the holy books of all other religions is pure fiction. They are cunningly crafted lies of the devil. The adherents of those religions tread on a path that leads to futility and destruction.

Now for illustrative purposes let’s see some harmful instructions in different religions to show that these religions are the works of the devil.

***Islam***

There are several glaring problems with Islam as a religion. It promises salvation in the form of a paradise, but only for male adherents. The Koran is completely silent on salvation for women. Thus half of humanity in Islam has no hope for salvation. Status of women as lower class in Islam is well known. Hadiths (sayings or acts attributed to Mohammad by his companions) have horrible things to say about women. We will not quote them because of their doubtful origins. But here is what the Koran has to say about treatment to be meted when the man or woman fear rebelliousness in their mate:

[4.34] Men are the maintainers of women because Allah has made some of them to excel others and because they spend out of their property; the good women are therefore obedient, guarding the unseen as Allah has guarded; and (as to) those on whose part you fear desertion, admonish them, and leave them alone in the sleeping-places [desert them sexually] and beat them; then if they obey you, do not seek a way against them; surely Allah is High, Great.

[4.128] And if a woman fears ill-usage or desertion on the part of her husband, there is no blame on them, if they effect a reconciliation between them, and reconciliation is better…”

Here the Koran prescribes beating and sexual desertion if a man detects rebelliousness in his wife. On the other hand, if a man mistreats a wife or she fears desertion, then they are advocated to reconcile. How practical is this advice in real life? If a man is inclined to mistreat or desert his wife, he would make it as hard as possible for his wife to be reconciled with him. The woman really has no recourse. The Bible on the other hand allows temporary separation to allow time to pass before attempting reconciliation.

Verse 4:34 allows men to desert their wives sexually when they detect rebelliousness in them, but women are not permitted to do so if they are mistreated or fear desertion. The following verses are so interpreted by the Muslim scholars.

[26.165] What! do you [meaning women] come to the males from among the creatures 166 And leave what your Lord has created for you of your wives? Nay, you are a people exceeding limits.”

Then verse [30.21]: “And one of His signs is that He created mates for you from yourselves that you may find rest in them…” is interpreted to mean that women were created for men’s sake and they must yield whenever the husband desires his wife. If she does not do so then she is an oppressor.

The Bible has quite a different view of the status of women in marriage. They are equal in all respects as concerns sexual matters. If Islam had its way, half of humanity would be condemned to a frustrating lower-class status for life.

The sharia law in Islam permits horrible punishment for minor crimes such as cutting off of hands for theft.

[5.38] And (as for) the man who steals and the woman who steals, cut off their hands as a punishment for what they have earned, an exemplary punishment from Allah; and Allah is Mighty, Wise.”

Do the religious leaders who advocate bodily harm for thefts realize what the thief will have to go through for the rest of his life? Just imagine the hardship you will go through if one or both your hands were cut off, such as in bodily cleaning functions, and earning a living. The Bible on the other hand never prescribes bodily harm for property theft. It requires compensation of property with property though the thief must as punishment compensate with more property than the worth of what he stole. This is described in Exodus 22:1:“1 If a man shall steal an ox, or a sheep, and kill it, or sell it; he shall restore five oxen for an ox, and four sheep for a sheep.”

God of the Bible certainly knows the worth of the hand for the man or woman whereas the ‘god of this world’ only seeks to inflict as much pain and suffering as he can on humans through cruelty practiced in the sharia law of Islam

.

Islam is also the most violent religion in the world, except perhaps for the religion of the Germans. Islam advocates ‘holy Jihad’ which is converting adherents of other religions to Islam by force. If they refuse. then they are to be murdered.

It is the existence of such instructions in Islam that make it a violent religion. And most of the victims of Muslim violence are other Muslims because of the mindset created by the instructions in Islam on how to live. We see Islam in practice in the conflict in Syria, Iraq, Libya, creation of the Islamic State and other places around the world.

***Hinduism***

In Hinduism salvation is being freed from the cycle of birth death and rebirth to have one’s immortal soul merged with the supreme Soul. Here is the path advocated by Lord Krishna to attain that goal:

Chapter 12 p. 34: “But they who thus fix their attention on the Absolute and Impersonal encounter greater hardships, for it is difficult for those who possess a body to realize Me as without one. Verily, those who surrender their actions to Me, who muse on Me, worship Me and meditate on Me alone, with no thought save of Me, O Arjuna! I rescue them from the ocean of life and death, for their minds are fixed on Me. Then let thy mind cling only to Me, let thy intellect abide in Me; and without doubt thou shalt live hereafter in Me alone.

“But if thou canst not fix thy mind firmly on Me, then, My beloved friend, try to do so by

constant practice. And if thou are not strong enough to practice concentration, then devote thyself to My service, do all thine acts for My sake, and thou shalt still attain the goal. And if thou art too weak even for this, then seek refuge in union with Me, and with perfect self-control renounce the fruit of thy action. Knowledge is superior to blind action, meditation to mere knowledge, renunciation of the fruit of action to meditation, and where there is renunciation peace will follow.”

Chapter 8, p.22 contains some more instructions on meditation to achieve salvation: “Whoso meditates on the Omniscient, the Ancient...He who leaves the body with mind unmoved and filled with devotion, by the power of his meditation gathering between his eyebrows his whole vital energy, attains the Supreme.

“Now I will speak briefly of the imperishable goal, proclaimed by those versed in the

scriptures, which the mystic attains when free from passion, and for which he is content to undergo the vow of continence. Closing the gates of the body, drawing the forces of his mind into the heart and by the power of meditation concentrating his vital energy in the brain; Repeating Om, the Symbol of Eternity, holding Me always in remembrance, he who thus leaves his body and goes forth reaches the Spirit Supreme.”

Chapter 13, p.36: “Renunciation of the delights of sense, absence of pride, right understanding of the painful problem of birth and death, of age and sickness;

Indifference, non-attachment to sex, progeny or home, equanimity in good fortune and in bad; Unswerving devotion to Me, by concentration on Me and Me alone, a love for solitude, indifference to social life; Constant yearning for the knowledge of Self and pondering over the lessons of the great Truth – this is Wisdom, all else ignorance.”

Chapter 6, p.17: “O Arjuna! Renunciation is in fact what is called Right Action. No one can become spiritual who has not renounced all desire…When a man renounces even the thought of initiating action, when he is not interested in sense objects or any results which may flow from his acts, then in truth he understands spirituality…

“The Self of him who is self-controlled and has attained peace is equally unmoved by heat or cold, pleasure or pain, honor or dishonor. He who desires nothing but wisdom and spiritual insight, who has conquered his senses and who looks with the same eye upon a lump of earth, a stone or fine gold, is a real saint. He looks impartially on all – lover, friend or foe; indifferent or hostile; alien or relative; virtuous or sinful.”

It is fortunate that in India only a few follow such silly nonsense. Most Indians are attached to their wives, children, families and friends. That’s why Indian society keeps functioning. There are only a few half-naked fakirs on the banks of the Ganges River in Benares who practice such asceticism or austerities [such as sitting in front of burning fire or hot coals during the hottest part of summer] and renounce everything and meditate most of the time. They have to survive by begging or the handouts of the common people, consuming without producing. The Mahabharata and the Ramayana contain stories of such fakirs gaining boons from the gods to use to punish others and seek vengeance on them. They are even able to use the boons to curse gods and drive them to fear. Of course, there has never been any proof of anyone gaining such boons or powers. Such tales exist only the fantasies of the writers of these books.

Another destructive bit of instructions in Hinduism is the caste system and the four-fold division of professions.

Chapter 18, p.50: “O Arjuna! The duties of spiritual teachers, the soldiers, the traders and the servants have all been fixed according to the dominant Quality in their nature.

Serenity, self-restraint, austerity, purity, forgiveness, as well as uprightness, knowledge,

wisdom and faith in God – these constitute the duty of a spiritual Teacher. Valor, glory, firmness, skill, generosity, steadiness in battle and ability to rule – these constitute the duty of a soldier. They flow from his own nature. Agriculture, protection of the cow and trade are the duty of a trader, again in accordance with his nature. The duty of a servant is to serve, and that too agrees with his nature.

“Perfection is attained when each attends diligently to his duty. Listen and I will tell you

how it is attained by him who always minds his own duty. Man reaches perfection by dedicating his actions to God, Who is the source of all being, and fills everything.

It is better to do one’s own duty, however defective it may be, than to follow the duty of

another, however well one may perform it. He who does his duty as his own nature

reveals it, never sins. The duty that of itself falls to one’s lot should not be abandoned, though it may have its defects. All acts are marred by defects, as fire is obscured by smoke.”

It was probably in reaction to this nonsense that condemned people for all generations into the caste and profession they happened to be assigned to by Cush and Nimrod [who is worshipped as Krishna] or born into that Buddhism developed. Later Sikhism also was formed partly in reaction to such oppression and excesses of Hinduism. Can you imagine you and all your future generations being condemned to be cleaners, or cobblers forever? That’s why India did not change for millennia. Fortunately, a lot has changed in India over the past 50 years in this regard because of modernization of the economy. British rule helped to break some of this oppression so that a vast majority of Hindus no longer believe in this nonsense. But they still continue to believe in the salvation offered by Krishna. They should realize that Krishna has made tall claims but has not given us a shred of proof that he is the Almighty. His destructive instructions on life that would lead to inaction rather than a vigorous productive life can have come from only the devil and not from the true God.

***Sikhism***

Sikhism has similar defects as Hinduism because it has borrowed most of its beliefs related to salvation from Hinduism. Its path to salvation is similar. In addition to constant meditation on God and non-attachment to worldly things [a destructive philosophy that leads one to inaction or at least a less than vigorous life], it advocates constantly praising God [which it calls Naam] to attain salvation. It lays a lot of emphasis on recitation from the Guru Granth, their holy book.

Repeating the same words, phrases or standard prayers over and over again are actually condemned in the Bible because they accomplish nothing with God. Matthew 6:7 (NKJV) says, “7 And when you pray, do not use vain repetitions as the heathen do. For they think that they will be heard for their many words.”

Another destructive philosophy mentioned in Sikhism is that of pre-ordination, meaning that whatever one does in one’s life is pre-ordained by God. It defeats God’s very purpose in creating humans as superior to animals (hence God-plane beings) because they possess mind power with free moral choice. They are not created as robots or with animal instinct. They can choose to do good or evil. This philosophy in Sikhism also leads some to not try their hardest to overcome obstacles in their lives. This is stated in the Guru Granth on p.15: “As it is pre-ordained, people speak their words. As it is pre-ordained, they consume their food. As it is pre-ordained, they walk along the way. As it is pre-ordained, they see and hear. As it is pre-ordained, they draw their breath.”

Clearly when the goal, the salvation offered is wrong and does not exist, the prescribed paths to it can lead only to destruction. That is true of Sikhism as well as Hinduism and Islam.

*The Role of the Guru in Sikhism*

In Sikhism, the guru [a personal religious teacher and spiritual guide] is venerated. The religion claims that salvation can be obtained only through the guru. That is a very destructive philosophy. If one were to follow this advice, a person would not have to assume responsibility for his salvation through hard work to build a direct relationship with God and would need only to please the guru. This makes the guru mediator between God and man. If an individual does not assume responsibility for obeying God diligently, he or she will not improve in becoming a righteous person. An unrighteous person cannot attain salvation, no matter that he is the most favorite of his guru. Sikhism thus puts focus on having a right relationship with the guru rather than with God through personal effort.

In contrast, the Bible advocates “Therefore, my beloved, as you have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling” (Philippians 2:12, NKJV). In the Bible, an individual is responsible for his own salvation and cannot attain salvation on the coattails of his pastor or guru as in Sikhism. A true Christian who does not become a righteous person by diligently obeying God, will not attain salvation, even if he was the most beloved person of his pastor in the entire congregation.

***Judaism***

The only thing negative that can be said about Judaism is that they have not recognized their true God. They have not realized that the God of the Old Testament they worship is none other than Jesus Christ. They need to read Old Testament prophecies that Jesus fulfilled to realize that He was indeed the prophesied Messiah who came to take away the sins of the world. But He will soon return as they expect the Messiah to come, in power and great glory to restore Israel to greatness.

Jews have a hazy concept of salvation because it is based only on the Old Testament. But their concept of salvation is not true because it does not explain many of the Old Testament scriptures. Again, Satan has cast a veil over the minds of those Jews who do not accept Jesus as the Messiah [Savior].

The Jews, however, have one advantage in that they understand they are required to keep the Law of Moses to the best of their ability. It leads them to become better persons. But they still need to learn to practice the Law with its spiritual intent in addition to merely the letter of the Law, and apply it with mercy and forgiveness which Jesus brought to mankind. But by virtue of having the right holy book, though only in part, they still have advantages over other religions which are the deception and lies of the ‘god of this world’ almost in their entirety.

***Christianity***

Christianity has the most advantages of all religions because it has the true holy book which is inspired by the Almighty God Himself. Therefore, they can rely on its every word.

But the great false Church based in Rome has foisted paganism on mainstream Christianity which God condemns in the Bible. Though mainstream Christianity benefits to the extent that it obeys the instruction in the Bible in how to live, it is far from attaining salvation because salvation requires obedience to God. Worshipping God on Sunday when He requires Sabbath observance; keeping pagan festivals that honor pagan gods instead of God’s festivals that picture His plan of salvation for mankind is rebellion against the Creator God. God will not offer salvation to those who are in rebellion against Him. So as far as salvation is concerned, mainstream Christianity is no better off than any of the other religions. The ‘god of this world’ has deceived mainstream Christianity as he has deceived all the other religions.

One of the greatest deceptions that mainstream Christianity has suffered is that since Christ's sacrifice forgives all sin, we are no longer required to keep the Law, the Ten Commandments. And that belief is the source of so much perversion and sin in Christianity.

The Roman Church is also an instrument of the devil to persecute true Christians. The world has had a taste of this persecution through the past 6 resurrections of the “Holy Roman Empire,” but will experience its worst persecution in the soon coming seventh resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire.”

Revelation 13:11 states: “11 And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb, and he spoke as a dragon.” The dragon is none other than Satan. This beast in prophecy has been identified as the Roman Church. This verse clearly identifies the Roman Church as an instrument of the devil. That’s why it has shed so much blood in its history. It is about to cause the worst bloodshed ever in the history of mankind in the next few years.

***There is Hope for Mankind***

From the state of the religions of the world that we have discussed, hope for salvation for mankind appears to be bleak. One may be tempted to conclude that the ‘god of this world’ is a very powerful competitor to the God of the Bible. But that is far far from the truth.

The great news is that God has a perfect plan to make salvation available to all of humanity, and most will qualify to receive it. There is one power that the ‘god of this world’, Satan the devil does not possess, that only the true God possesses. And that is the power to kill and then make alive.

God says in Deuteronomy 32:39, “See now that I, even I, am he, and there is no god with me: I kill, and I make alive; I wound, and I heal: neither is there any that can deliver out of my hand.”

God’s great plan of salvation for all mankind is pictured in His seven annual holy days (all mentioned in Leviticus 23) which only the true Church of God keeps and understands. Mainstream Christianity is completely blinded to this plan. It has already been described in Chapter 3.

The true God has a foolproof plan to change human beings into His immortal sons. Satan cannot thwart this plan though at present he appears to be succeeding in doing so. God’s purposes will stand. All of humanity can rejoice in this hope.

The search for the truth in religion is never an easy experience. It may even be a gut-wrenching one for many because vast majority of humanity will be wrong in its faith. Most will discover that they have been following myths and very diligently chasing false dreams of salvation.

I went through a very humbling experience in my search for the true religion. I lived and practiced Sikhism because my father was a Sikh. One is emotionally attached to one’s religion. Each step in the discovery process was humiliating when I realized that I had been wrong in my beliefs. But I started my search with the firm determination that I would follow the true religion when I discovered.

I empathize with all who want to embark on the journey to search for the true religion. It is very humiliating to learn that one has followed cunningly devised fables. But of what value is falsehood compared to the truth? Leaving one’s false religion is a small price to pay. Knowing that one has the true religion leads to priceless peace of mind. Hope you realize that peace of mind!

**CONCLUSION**

The Bible truly stands unique among scriptures of all religions. Many critical scholars have tried to refute its authenticity and put forward all kinds of arguments. Search the internet and you will find enough articles or writings attacking its authenticity. It costs very little to put out trash on the Internet.The devil has plenty of agents whose primary business is to deceive people in order to turn them away from God. It does not take much intelligence to figure out that questioning the authenticity of God’s word would be one of their top priorities. But all their arguments have been proved to be without merit. Bible has been proved to be more accurately preserved and transmitted throughout the centuries than any other book, religious or otherwise.

We have proved that the Koran, the Hindu Scriptures and the Sikh scriptures are not the words of God, because they are not backed by the power of God. But the Bible has provided irrefutable proof in terms of numerous prophecies fulfilled that it is inspired by the Almighty God. When the Koran claims that the Old Testament was corrupted by the Jews and the New Testament was corrupted by the Christians it is a diabolical lie told to Mohammad by the demon who was masquerading around as the archangel Gabriel. Muslims should examine the evidence that shows how carefully the Old Testament and the New Testament have been transmitted and preserved over thousands of years, rather than believe the lies told in the Koran.

The Bible is scientifically accurate. There are no errors in it. We also Jesus’ testimony that it is accurate and infallible. We also have the testimony of the apostles, prophets and even God’s angels that it is word of God. Thus, the Bible has met all the criteria we had established to test whether a holy book is the true word of God.

Coming from a background in Sikhism, just as I rejoiced when I found the true word of God, all people, including Muslims, should rejoice that it exists and they may use it as a completely reliable instruction manual to order their lives.

**SUGGESTED READING**

Following Booklets available free of charge from the United Church of God at www.ucg.org:

1. Does God Exist?

2. Jesus Christ: The Real Story

3. Creation or Evolution

4. Is the Bible True?

Following Booklets available free of charge from the Philadelphia Church of God at www.pcog.org:

5. Does God Exist? By Herbert W. Armstrong

6. The Proof of the Bible by Herbert W. Armstrong

Following Booklets available free of charge from the Restored Church of God at www.rcg.org:

7. Does God Exist?

8. Bible Authority: Can it be Proven?

9. How We Got the Bible.

10. Evolution: Facts, Fallacies and Implications.

Following Booklets available free of charge from the Living Church of God at www.lcg.org:

11. The Bible: Fact or Fiction by Douglas S. Winnail

12. The Real God: Proofs and Promises by Douglas S. Winnail